



**X-TYPE**

**OWNER'S HANDBOOK**

Publication Part No. **JJM 18 02 20 801**

This handbook forms part of the Owner literature supplied with your new vehicle. Left-hand drive and right-hand drive conditions may be shown in the graphics and where information is specific to a particular country, it is indicated as such.

The **Quick start** section is designed to rapidly familiarise the driver with the initial set up and also explain some of the unique features. Please take the time to study the operating instructions with your vehicle as soon as you can.

### **Important**

*The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment. Some of the options may not be fitted to your vehicle unless they formed part of the original vehicle specification. Therefore some parts of this handbook may not apply to your vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles, it may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.*

*The options, hardware and software in your vehicle are from the available specifications for the market in which the vehicle was intended for sale. If your vehicle is to be used in another geographical area you may have to modify the vehicle specification to suit local conditions. Jaguar Cars Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications.*

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Vehicle design changes may have been made after this handbook was printed. When this occurs a handbook supplement is added to the literature pack. Subsequent updates can be viewed on the Jaguar Internet site at; **[www.ownerinfo.jaguar.com](http://www.ownerinfo.jaguar.com)**.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

©Jaguar Cars Limited

All rights reserved.

Published by Jaguar Technical Communications.

# Handbook Contents

---

## Quick Overview

Quick Overview . . . . .	7
Filling Station Information . . . . .	29

## Owner Information

General Information . . . . .	33
On-board Event Data . . . . .	41
Reporting Safety Defects . . . . .	42

## Security and Locks

Ignition Switch . . . . .	43
Vehicle Security . . . . .	44
Door Locks . . . . .	47
Luggage Compartment Locks . . . . .	50
Alarm Systems . . . . .	52
Garage Door Opener . . . . .	54

## Before Driving

Seats . . . . .	58
Occupant Protection . . . . .	62
Child Safety . . . . .	72
Clock . . . . .	80
Steering Column . . . . .	81
Door Windows . . . . .	82
Mirrors . . . . .	84
Luggage Compartment . . . . .	85

## On the Road

Instruments . . . . .	90
Warning Lights . . . . .	92
Audible Warnings . . . . .	96
Message Centre . . . . .	97
Trip Computer . . . . .	100
Cruise (Speed) Control . . . . .	103
Exterior Lighting . . . . .	105
Interior Lighting . . . . .	108
Parking Assist . . . . .	110
Horn . . . . .	112
Sunroof . . . . .	113
Wipers and Washers . . . . .	114
Parkbrake . . . . .	117
Interior Features . . . . .	118
Engine Starting . . . . .	123
Transmission . . . . .	125

Braking System . . . . .	128
Traction Control . . . . .	130
Stability Control . . . . .	131
Driving Information . . . . .	132
Fuel and Refuelling . . . . .	136

## Climate Control

Climate Control . . . . .	141
Automatic Climate Control . . . . .	144
Touch-screen Climate Control . . . . .	149

## Roadside Emergency

Inertia Switch . . . . .	158
Emergency Starting . . . . .	159
Wheel Changing . . . . .	161
Vehicle Recovery . . . . .	166
Bulb Renewal . . . . .	170
Fuses . . . . .	175
Fire Extinguisher . . . . .	182

## Maintenance

General Maintenance . . . . .	183
Hood/Bonnet Release . . . . .	184
Regular Checks . . . . .	185
Checking and Top-up . . . . .	187
Battery . . . . .	194
Wiper Blades . . . . .	197
Vehicle Care . . . . .	198
Electrical Accessories . . . . .	201

## Tire Information

Tires . . . . .	202
Cargo Weights . . . . .	220

## Specifications

Engine Data . . . . .	222
Weights . . . . .	223
Load Weights . . . . .	224
Dimensions . . . . .	225

## Touch-screen

Touch-screen . . . . .	226
Touch-screen Display . . . . .	228

# Handbook Contents

---

## Audio System

Audio System . . . . .	232
Steering Wheel Controls . . . . .	234
Radio . . . . .	235
Single CD Player . . . . .	248
Compact Disc Changer . . . . .	251

## Telephone

Telephone Introduction . . . . .	255
Telephone System . . . . .	258
Telephone Operation - Standard . . .	262
Telephone Operation - Touch-Screen . . . . .	266
Phone Book . . . . .	271
Declaration of Conformity . . . . .	273

## Voice Control

JaguarVoice . . . . .	274
-----------------------	-----

A comprehensive index is located at the back of this handbook.

# Quick Overview

## Quick Overview

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING	7
CENTRAL DOOR LOCKING	8
LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT	8
CLOCK ADJUSTMENT	9
WINDOWS/DOOR MIRRORS	10
SEATS	11
DRIVING POSITION MEMORY	11
STEERING COLUMN LOCK/ ADJUSTMENT	12
SEAT BELTS/CHILD RESTRAINTS	12
PARKING ASSIST	13
OVERHEAD CONSOLE	14
CLIMATE CONTROL	14
FACIA AND CONTROLS	16
EXTERIOR LAMPS	18
WIPERS AND WASHERS	19
WARNING INDICATORS	20
TRANSMISSION	21
CRUISE (SPEED) CONTROL	22
DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)	22
AUDIO SYSTEM KEY FEATURES	23
RADIO OPERATION	24
CD OPERATION	25
TELEPHONE - BLUETOOTH SYSTEM	27

## Filling Station Information

FUEL TYPE	29
FUEL FILLING	29
HOOD RELEASE	30
UNDERHOOD TOP-UP	30
TIRE PRESSURES	31



# Quick Overview

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

**Note:** *Dependent upon vehicle configuration, the operation of the remote handset may differ from the following.*

### Remote handset



JAG0667



Press to release door key



Press once to lock the vehicle and arm the alarm. Press twice within three seconds to couple-lock the vehicle. Press and hold to close the sunroof and any open windows.



Press once to disarm the alarm, unlock the driver's door and unlock the luggage compartment. Press again to unlock remaining doors



Press once to switch the headlamps on for 25 seconds.



Press to unlock and open luggage compartment.

### Unlocking mode alternatives

Single stage unlocking will unlock the vehicle with a single press. Two stage unlocking will unlock the driver's door and luggage compartment with a single press and all other doors with a second press.

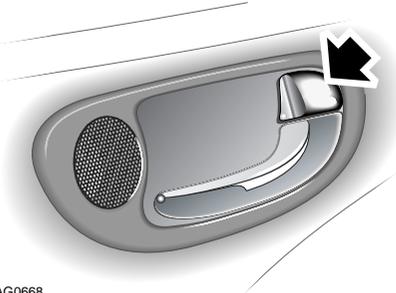
To change between modes, press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the remote handset simultaneously for four seconds. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

### Unlocking with the door key

If the vehicle is unlocked manually via the door lock, the key must be inserted in the starter switch within 15 seconds to prevent the alarm being activated.

# Quick Overview

## CENTRAL DOOR LOCKING



JAG0668

To lock all the doors, press the lock lever on either of the front doors.

To unlock all doors, pull the lock lever on either of the front doors.

### Drive away door locking

The doors and luggage compartment will automatically lock when the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 5 mph (7 km/h).

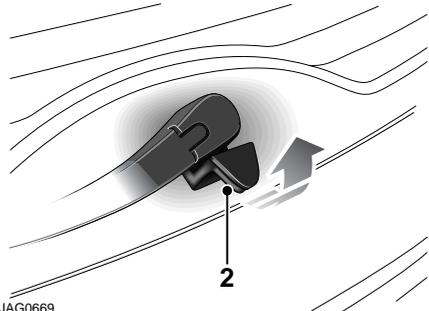
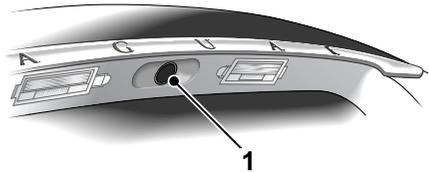
This feature can be disabled by your Dealer.

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

The luggage compartment is electrically locked and unlocked in conjunction with the driver's door.



To open the luggage compartment with the vehicle locked, press the luggage compartment button on the remote handset.



JAG0669

To open the luggage compartment with the vehicle unlocked, press the release button **1** on the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

### Tailgate glass - Wagon

To open the tailgate glass, press the release button **2**, located on the reverse of the tailgate handle and lift the glass.

### Care Point

- The release button on the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is disabled when the vehicle is alarmed.

# Quick Overview

## CLOCK AJUSTMENT

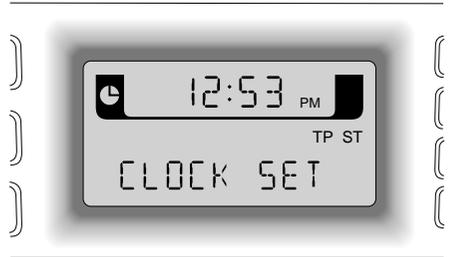
### Touch-screen



JAG0804

1. Press the **MENU** button on the touch screen surround to access the **MENU** screen.
2. Touch **System Setup** to access the **SYSTEM SETUP** screen.
3. Touch the **Set Clock** icon.
4. Adjust the time by touching the hour and minute up or down arrow icons.
5. Touch the **12/24** icon to select between twelve or twenty-four hour display.
6. Touch **Set** to confirm.

### Non-touch-screen

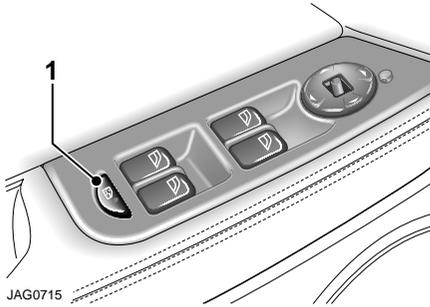


JAG0805

1. Press and hold the Audio **MODE** button until **TA VOLUME** is displayed.
2. Repeatedly press and release the **MODE** button until **CLOCK SET** is displayed.
3. Press the seek up/down keys to select either 12 or 24 hour format and press the **MODE** button to continue.
4. If 12 hour is selected, use the # key to denote **AM** or **PM**.
5. Enter the time in four-digit format using the key pad.
6. To exit, press and hold the **MODE** button until the display reverts to audio mode.

# Quick Overview

## WINDOWS/DOOR MIRRORS



JAG0715

### Windows

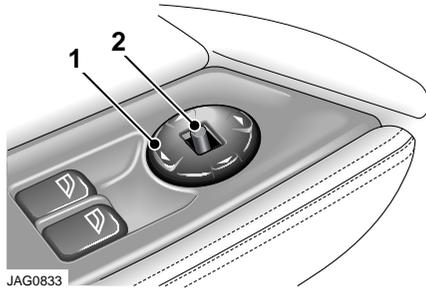
The windows can be fully opened or closed with a single operation of the switch.

- To open the window, fully press the respective switch. Press the switch again to stop the window from fully opening.
- To close the window, pull the switch fully up. Pull the switch again to stop the window from fully closing.

To partially open a window, lightly press the appropriate switch and release when the window reaches the required position.

Press button **1** to inhibit the operation of the rear window switches.

## Door mirrors



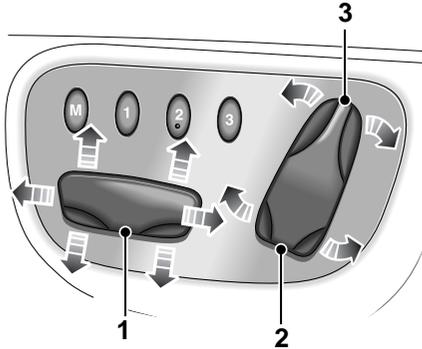
JAG0833

Select the appropriate mirror using selector switch **2**. Use the 4-way switch **1** to adjust the position of the mirror glass.

# Quick Overview

## SEATS

10-way electrical seat adjustment - memory seats



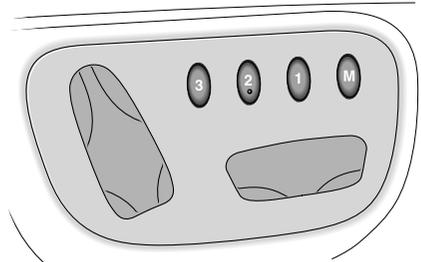
JAG0770

1. Seat position switch. Controls fore/aft position and front and rear cushion height.
2. Seat back angle switch.
3. Lumbar support switch.

### Passenger seat

The 10-way adjustable passenger seat is not fitted with memory buttons.

## DRIVING POSITION MEMORY



JAG0806

Once you have adjusted the driver's seat and exterior mirrors for your ideal driving position, the vehicle can memorise these settings for future use.

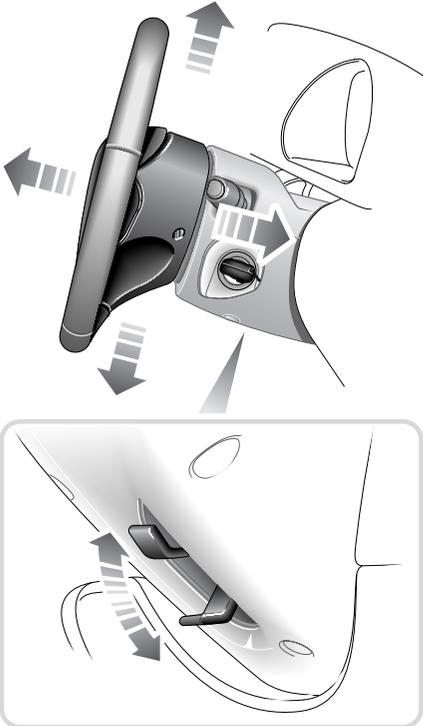
1. With the starter switch in position **I** or **II** press the **M** button on the driver's seat switchpack. A chime will sound to indicate that the seat is in memory mode.
2. Within five seconds, press button **1**, **2** or **3** to memorise the current settings.

A double chime will sound to confirm that the settings are memorised. Any existing settings will be overwritten.

To recall a memorised driving position press button **1**, **2** or **3**. This feature will only operate if the automatic transmission is in **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral).

# Quick Overview

## STEERING COLUMN LOCK/ ADJUSTMENT



JAG0712

Push steering column adjustment lever downwards.

Move the steering wheel to the required position then fully raise the lever to lock the steering column in position.

## SEAT BELTS/CHILD RESTRAINTS



### WARNING:

The use of front and rear seat belts is mandatory in most countries. Using seat belts saves lives. They should be worn by all occupants whenever the vehicle is in use.



A warning indicator on the instrument pack will illuminate to alert you that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is unbuckled. Dependent upon specification this may be accompanied by an intermittent chime.

### Child Seats

It is important to remember that the child's weight, rather than age, determines the type of seat that is required.

Refer to **Child Safety** to determine the correct seat for your child. See "CHILD SAFETY SEAT - PROPER USE CHART" on page 79.

### Rear centre seat belt interlock - Wagon only

The centre rear seat belt is anchored to the back of the seat. If the seat backrest is not correctly latched the seat belt reel will not extend.

# Quick Overview

## Automatic Locking Reels (ALR)

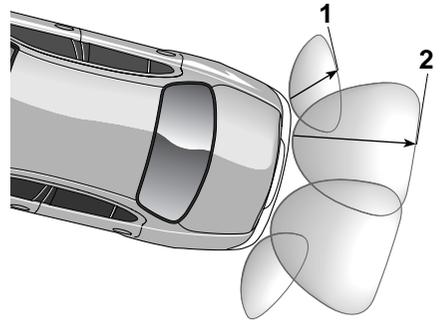
Passenger seat belts have ALR fitted for use with child seats.

- To engage: extend the belt to maximum length to enable locking mechanism.
- To disengage: unbuckle the belt and allow belt to fully retract.

With ALR enabled, as the seat belt retracts it will automatically lock, preventing re-extension.

Ensure passengers do not fully extend the restraints and inadvertently engage this feature during normal use.

## PARKING ASSIST



JAG0747

An audible warning will sound when reversing if objects are detected within range of the parking assist sensors.

1 is approximately 30 cm (12 inches).

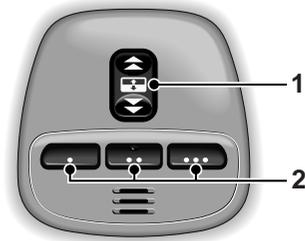
2 is approximately 150 cm (59 inches).

### Care points

- Sensors may activate on detection of water, snow or ice on their surface. This is entirely normal and regular cleaning will aid performance.
- Parking assist may sound if it detects a signal operating at the same frequency to that of the sensors (e.g. Motorcycles, Airbrakes).

# Quick Overview

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE



JAG0836

### Sunroof

The sunroof is fitted with a facility that allows it to be fully opened or closed with a single operation of switch 1.

### Garage door opener

The buttons 2 on the overhead console can be programmed to transmit radio frequencies that can operate external devices e.g. garage doors, entry gates, security systems, etc....

See "GARAGE DOOR OPENER TRANSCEIVER" on page 54.

## CLIMATE CONTROL

These are the primary functions of the climate control system. For further information, see 'Climate Control', page 141.



JOL4740



JAG0811

For those vehicles fitted with the touch-screen navigation system, the advanced climate control functions can be accessed by pressing the **CLIMATE** button.

### AUTO (automatic) mode

Press to select automatic operation of the climate control system. The system will automatically adjust the heat output, blower speed, air intake and airflow distribution to maintain the selected temperature(s) and reduce misting without constant adjustments by the driver or passengers.

Windshield heaters and timed air recirculation may be selected whilst in **AUTO** mode. Selecting any other function will cancel **AUTO** operation.

### Recommended mode

- Select **AUTO** as the normal operating mode. This will help prevent window misting and odours from the climate control system.

# Quick Overview

## Air conditioning (A/C)



Air conditioning is an integral part of the climate control system, providing cooled and dehumidified air for occupant comfort; the dry airflow is also effective in preventing misting of the windows. Press button to switch the air conditioning system on or off.

## External water deposits

- The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air and deposits the excess water beneath the vehicle. Puddles may form, but this is normal and no cause for concern.

## Air recirculation



Air recirculation is used to stop outside odours from entering the vehicle or to improve performance of the air conditioning system in regions of high ambient temperatures.

Press the button to switch timed air recirculation system on or off.

## Temperature selection



Press the red buttons to increase temperature and the blue buttons to decrease temperature.

To quickly jump from **HI** or **LO** to a mid range temperature setting, press and hold the **AUTO** button for a few seconds.

## Defrost/demist mode



Press the **DEF** button to remove frost or heavy misting from the windshield. The front and rear windshield heaters will be activated.

To deselect defrost mode, press **AUTO**. The front and rear windshield heaters will remain on.

## Heated windshields and door mirrors



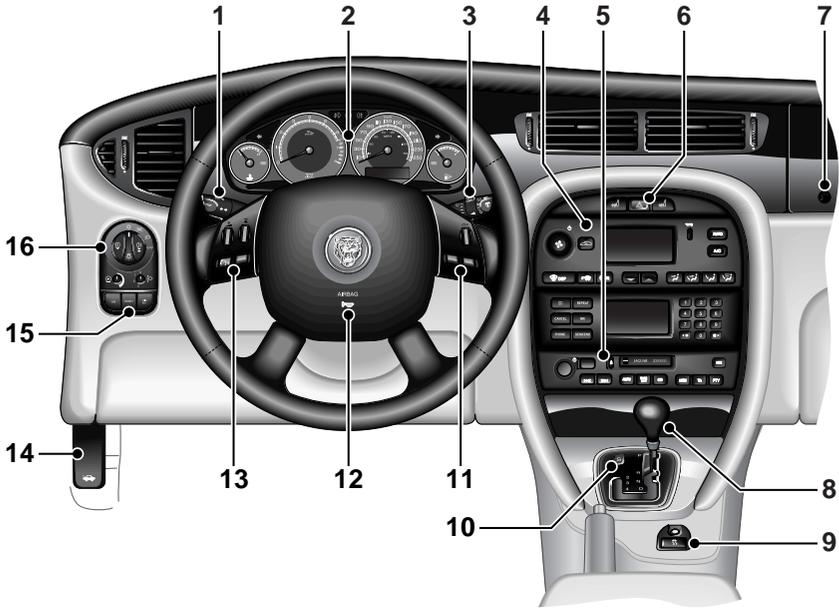
The front and rear windshield heaters can be switched on or off in any mode, even when the climate control system is off, but will only operate when the engine is running.

Operating the **DEF** button will automatically activate the front and rear windshield heaters.

The door mirror heaters are controlled by the rear windshield heater button.

# Quick Overview

## FACIA AND CONTROLS



JOL4748

1. Direction indicators/trip computer switch. See “DIRECTION INDICATORS” on page 107.
2. Instrument pack/warning indicators. See “INSTRUMENT PANEL” on page 90.
3. Wiper/washer switch. See “Wipers and Washers” on page 114.
4. Heating and ventilation system. See “Climate Control” on page 141.
5. Audio system
6. Hazard warning switch. See “HAZARD WARNING” on page 107.
7. Passenger air bag deactivation indicator. See “AIR BAGS” on page 66.
8. Gear selector lever. See “AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION” on page 125.
9. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) switch. See “DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)” on page 131.
10. Sport mode switch. See “Sports Mode” on page 127.
11. Cruise control switches. See “Cruise (Speed) Control” on page 103.

# Quick Overview

12. Horn. See “Horn” on page 112.
13. Audio switches
14. Hood release lever. See “HoodBonnet Release” on page 184.
15. Trip computer reset switch. See “TRIP COMPUTER SWITCHPACK” on page 101.
16. Lamps master switch. See “EXTERIOR LIGHTING SWITCH” on page 105.

# Quick Overview

## Passenger air bag deactivation indicator



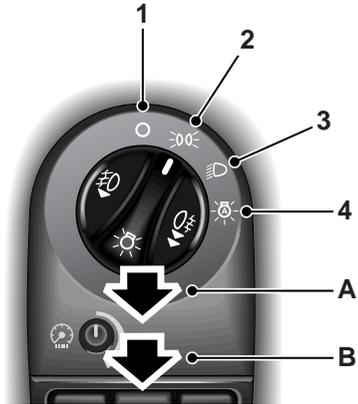
The front passenger seat is fitted with an occupancy sensor that determines the state of seat occupancy and sets the air bag status to suit:

- Seat unoccupied - air bag deactivated and indicator off.
- Seat occupied - air bag activated and indicator off.
- Seat occupied by a child, child seat or low weight object - air bag deactivated and indicator on.
- Passenger too close to air bags - air bag deactivated and indicator on.

See "OCCUPANT SENSING" on page 69.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### Lamps master switch



JOL4744

1. Off
2. Side lamps
3. Dipped headlamps
4. Autolamps
- A. Front fog lamps

Pull the switch to position **A** to switch on the front fog lamps.

- B. Rear fog lamps

Pull the switch to position **B** to switch on the front and rear fog lamps.

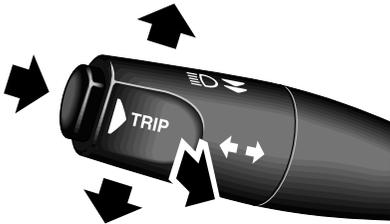
**Note:** Fog lamps can only be operated when the master switch is in either position **2** or **3**.

# Quick Overview

## Autolamps

If Autolamps is selected, a sensor monitors the exterior light levels and will automatically switch the side lamps and dipped headlamps on and off. With Autolamps selected, if the windscreen wipers are operated continuously for more than 20 seconds, then the exterior lamps will be switched on automatically.

Fog lamps cannot be activated when Autolamps is selected.



JOL4741

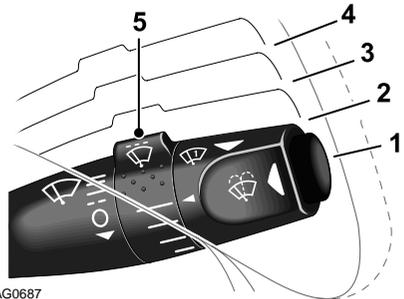
## Direction indicators

Move the lever up or down to activate the direction indicators.

## Headlamp flash

Pull the lever to the first position and release to flash the headlamps. Pull the lever to the second position and release to switch on the high beam. To switch off the high beam, again pull the lever to the second position and release.

## WIPERS AND WASHERS



JAG0687

1. Windshield wipers off and parked.
2. Intermittent wipe.
3. Slow wiper operation.
4. High speed wiper operation.
5. Intermittent wipe delay.

Press button for windshield wash/wipe.

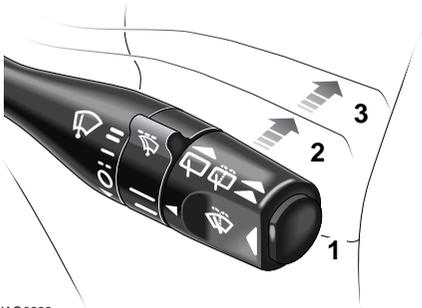
Rotate the collar to adjust the speed of the intermittent wipe or to select **AUTO** for automatic operation of wipers.

### Automatic operation

- The wiper lever must be in position 2 and **AUTO** selected on the collar to enable automatic operation of the wipers.

# Quick Overview

## Rear wiper and washer



JAG0689

Position 1 is off and parked. Push the lever to position 2 for intermittent operation of the rear wiper. Push and hold the lever in position 3 to operate the rear washer and wiper.

## WARNING INDICATORS



Low oil pressure



Battery charge indicator



Seat belt reminder



Parkbrake on/brake fluid low



Anti-lock braking system



Engine malfunction detected



Air bag system fault detected



Low washer fluid level



Sidelamps on



Headlamp high beam on



Front fog lamps on



Rear fog lamps on



Direction indicators



Low outside temperature

# Quick Overview

## TRANSMISSION

### Gearshift interlock

The starter switch must be in position **II** and the foot brake applied before the gear selector can be moved from **P** (Park) to **R** (Reverse).

The lever can be moved into **P** with the starter switch off.

### Gear selector

The J-gate gear selector lever is designed to accommodate two different driving techniques as follows:

- Automatic selection: the right-hand side of the selector gate.
- Manual selection: the left-hand side of the selector gate to individually select 4th, 3rd or 2nd gear.

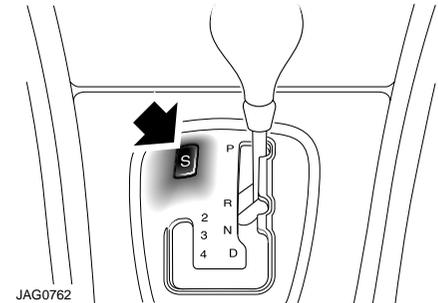
After selecting **R** (Reverse) or **D** (Drive) from **N** (Neutral) or **P** (Park), wait briefly for the transmission to engage before accelerating.

### Kickdown mode

Kickdown provides maximum engine performance in circumstances where rapid acceleration is required, such as when overtaking. Kickdown is operated when the accelerator pedal is pressed fully down, beyond the normal operating spring pressure. This causes the transmission to change down to the lowest gear possible to achieve maximum acceleration.

Kickdown mode is in effect for as long as the pedal is fully depressed.

## Sports mode



Press the switch (arrowed) to select Sports mode. A red indicator in the switch will illuminate to indicate that sports mode is active. When Sports mode is selected, the gear change points are modified to make full use of the engine's power.

**Note:** *With the gear selector in D (Drive) and Sports mode active, the transmission will use 5th gear less at higher cruising speeds.*

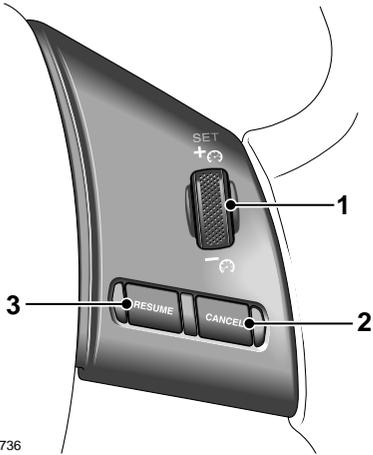
*Fuel consumption will be adversely affected*

# Quick Overview

## CRUISE (SPEED) CONTROL

The cruise control system will maintain a set road speed until either cruise control is cancelled or the brake pedal is used.

The system is controlled via switches on the steering wheel:



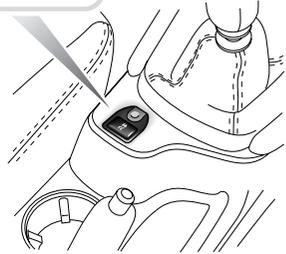
JAG0736

1. **SET/Speed adjustment wheel** - to engage cruise control initially. Also use to increase/decrease the set speed.
2. **CANCEL** - cancels cruise control but retains the set speed in memory.
3. **RESUME** - to resume a set speed retained in memory.

When the vehicle is accelerated above the set speed, cruise control cancels, but resumes when the vehicle slows down to the set speed, the message **CRUISE CANCELLED** or **CRUISE ENGAGED** appears in the message centre to indicate the status of the system

**Note:** Cruise control will automatically disengage when the vehicle speed falls below 18 mph (28 km/h).

## DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)



JAG0672

DSC uses traction control and anti-lock braking systems to maximise the vehicle's handling performance and help prevent wheelspin.

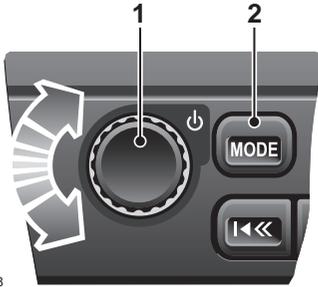
DSC is automatically activated when the ignition switch is turned to position **II**, but can be turned off by pressing the button on the centre console. An amber indicator in the instrument pack will permanently illuminate whenever DSC is switched off.

In the event of a system fault, the message **DSC SYSTEM FAULT** will also be displayed in the message centre.

# Quick Overview

## AUDIO SYSTEM KEY FEATURES

### General operation



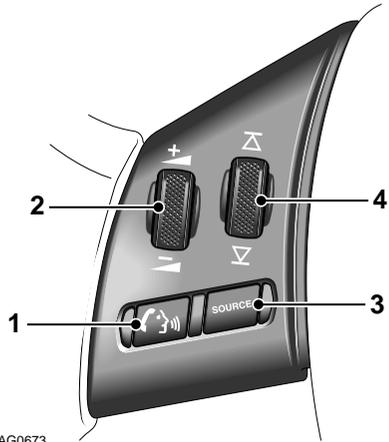
JAG0818

Press the control knob **1** to switch on/off and rotate to adjust the volume.

To adjust the sound settings, press the **MODE** button **2** repeatedly, until the required setting is displayed. Turn the control knob **1** to adjust the level or rating.

After approximately five seconds, the system will return to normal control mode.

### Steering wheel controls



JAG0673

1. Press to mute audio unit (Non-Voice only).
2. Rotate as required to increase or decrease volume.
3. Press and release to cycle through Radio, FM, AM, Cassette, CD, MD and CD multichanger.
4. Rotate and release to cycle through preset radio stations, the next CD/MD track or to use cassette AMS (Automatic Music Search). Rotate and hold for at least two seconds to cycle to the next strongest station, next CD change or change cassette side.

# Quick Overview

## RADIO OPERATION

 To switch on the radio function, press the **AM/FM** button. Pressing this button repeatedly scrolls through FM, MW and LW wavebands.

 To search for a radio station, press the '**Seek**' arrow buttons.

### Setting the radio presets

 Once a radio station has been tuned, press and hold the desired preset button (or touch a station position on touch screen) until a 'beep' is heard. The preset is now stored

A total of nine presets can be stored for each waveband.

 The radio presets can be automatically set by using the 'Auto Memory' function. Press and hold the **A MEM** button for two seconds. The radio will be briefly muted while it searches the waveband for the nine strongest stations.

## Activating Radio Broadcast Data System (RBDS)

 To activate this function, press and hold the **TA** button, until **RBDS ON** is displayed (about two seconds). With RBDS activated and FM selected, RBDS station names will be displayed. RBDS also displays the type of broadcast material, e.g. Rock, News, Classical.

To de-activate this feature, press and release the **TA** button again.

# Quick Overview

## CD OPERATION

### Single CD player



If the radio or CD multichanger is being used, pressing the **CD** button will resume playing any CD installed in the player mechanism.

When a CD is loaded into the aperture, it will begin to load and play automatically.

Pressing the **CD** button whilst in CD play mode will pause the current track. A subsequent press of the **CD** button will resume play mode.

Six discs can be loaded into the multichanger unit, and a further single disc in the audio console (when fitted).



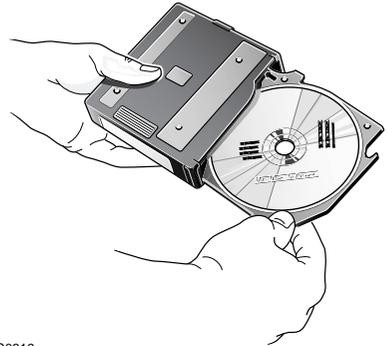
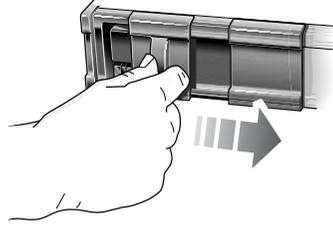
To skip tracks, continually press the '**Seek**' arrow buttons to move back or forward accordingly.

Pressing and holding these buttons will search through the selected track.



When a disc is inserted, the CD icon is displayed. Press the Disc Eject button to eject the CD. The display will show **DISC EJECT** and the CD icon will be turned off.

### CD Multichanger



JAG0819

### Care point

- Remember to close the multichanger door this will prevent dirt getting into the unit and help reduce skipping.

The CD multichanger is located in the luggage compartment. To load a CD into the multichanger:

- Slide open the multichanger door, press the **Eject** button and remove the magazine. Close the door.
- Pull a tray out from the magazine and insert a CD (label side up). Slide tray into magazine until a 'click' is heard.
- Slide open the multichanger door and ensuring correct orientation, replace the magazine. Ensure the magazine 'clicks' into position.

# Quick Overview

## CD selection



1. Press the **CDC** button (**CD** button on MiniDisc and cassette player systems) to select the CD multichanger mode.
2. Press preset buttons **1 - 6** to select the appropriate CD loaded in the multichanger.  
If a touch-screen is fitted to the vehicle, disc selection can be made by touching the relevant numbered disc icon.
3. When playing a CD, press the **CDC** button to pause play. Press again to continue play.

## Playing random tracks



To play random tracks from the disc, press and release the **MIX** button. To cancel, press the **MIX** button again.

To play random tracks from all discs loaded in the multichanger, press the **MIX** button for two seconds. To cancel, press and hold the **MIX** button.

# Quick Overview

## TELEPHONE - BLUETOOTH SYSTEM

Mobile phones with Bluetooth capability can communicate with the vehicle's inbuilt telephone system.

The following procedure demonstrates how to connect the most popular brands of mobile phone.

### Pairing a handset to the vehicle

1. Turn the starter switch to position II.
2. Press the telephone button on the audio panel. The touch-screen will display the message **No BT phone**.  
On non touch-screen systems the message **SIG** will be displayed.

3. Either using the on-screen or the audio panel keyboard, press **##3##**.
4. Touch the on-screen call icon or press the call button on the audio panel.
5. Prepare the handset for pairing to the system.

See the telephone manufacturer's instructions for further details, or follow the table below for generic commands.

	Nokia	Motorola	Ericsson
1.	Select menu	Select menu	Select menu
2.	Select settings	Select settings	Select connectivity
3.	Select Bluetooth OR Select Connectivity then Bluetooth	Select Connection	Select Bluetooth
4.	Select On	Select Bluetooth link	Select My Devices
5.	Select Search for Audio devices	Select Hands-free	With New Device highlighted, select Add. Press OK to confirm
6.	After search select Jaguar	Select Look for devices	After search select Jaguar
7.	Enter pass code 1313. Press OK to confirm	After search select Jaguar	Select Connect
8.	No connection? Select Bluetooth (Menu) then Paired devices Jaguar	Permission to bond? Select Yes and enter pass code 1313	Enter pass code 1313 after prompt

When the handset has been successfully paired to the system, the touch-screen message changes to **REGISTERED** or **PHONE CONNECTED**. On systems without a touch-screen the audio system message changes to **SIG\***.

**Note:** For best results when pairing your handset to the system, ensure the handset is fully charged.

# Quick Overview

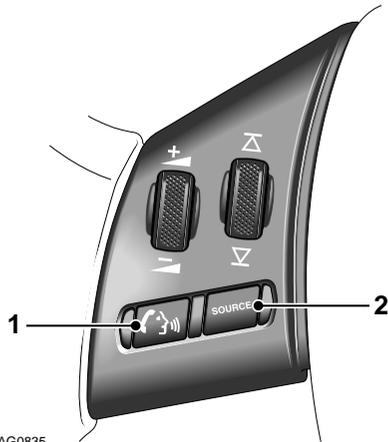
## Mobile phone compatibility

There are a number of mobile phones that have been tested to function correctly with the Jaguar system, however not all mobile phones are compatible. For the latest list of compatible phones and software versions, please refer to [www.ownerinfo.jaguar.com](http://www.ownerinfo.jaguar.com). Alternatively consult your Jaguar Dealer.

## Downloading phone book entries

1. Turn the starter switch to position **II**, and ensure the handset is paired to the vehicle's system.
2. Press the telephone button on the audio panel.
3. Either using the on-screen keypad or the audio panel keyboard, press **##2##**.
4. Touch the on-screen call icon or press the call button on the audio panel.
5. Switch off the starter switch for six minutes to allow the system to complete the download process.

## Making a call



JAG0835

1. Press and hold the **SOURCE** button **2** on the steering wheel control, or press the call button **1** on the audio panel. **Phone** will be displayed.
2. Key in the phone number required using the on-screen or audio panel keyboard.
3. Press the call button on the steering wheel control, or on the audio panel. **Calling** will be displayed.
4. To end the call, press the call button on the steering wheel control, or on the audio panel.

## Receiving a call

To answer or end a call, press the call button on the steering wheel control or on the audio panel.

# Filling Station Information

## FUEL TYPE

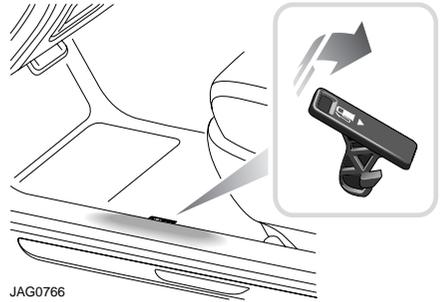
**Caution:** Jaguar petrol engines are not fitted with equipment necessary for the use of fuels containing more than 10 per cent ethanol. Do not use E85 fuels (85 per cent ethanol content). If E85 fuels are used serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Use only Premium unleaded gasoline with a minimum anti-knock index (AKI) of 91.

### Incorrect fuelling

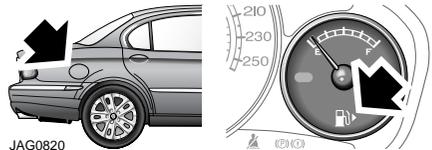
**Caution:** If the fuel tank is accidentally filled with the wrong type of fuel, it is essential that the engine is not started and you seek qualified assistance.

## FUEL FILLING



JAG0766

Pull the fuel filler flap release. This is located on the floor, outboard of the driver's seat. See "FUEL TANK FILLING" on page 136.



JAG0820

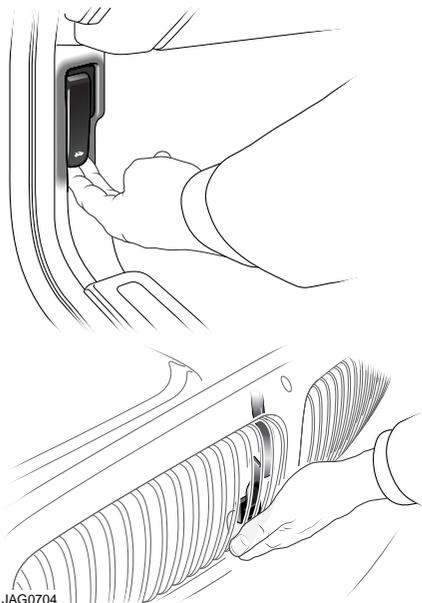
The filler flap is located on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

For quickness and to completely fill the tank, ensure that the fuel nozzle rests on the bottom of the filler neck.

After refuelling, refit the filler cap in the filler neck and twist the cap clockwise until it clicks three times. Close the flap, which automatically locks shut.

# Filling Station Information

## HOOD RELEASE



Pull the release lever located below the fascia on the left-hand side of the vehicle. See "HoodBonnet Release" on page 184.

## UNDERHOOD TOP-UP

### Recommended engine oil

Castrol 5W-30 to Jaguar specification WSS M2C913 - A or B.

### JAGUAR RECOMMENDS



See "RECOMMENDED ENGINE OIL" on page 188.

### Windshield/headlight washer reservoir.

See "WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID" on page 191.

### Cooling system

50% water/50% anti-freeze. See "ENGINE ANTI-FREEZE" on page 193.

# Filling Station Information

## TIRE PRESSURES

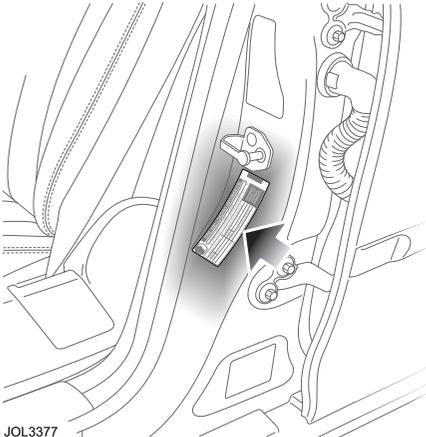


### WARNING:

When using tires other than those recommended by Jaguar, do not exceed the speed capacity recommended by the manufacturer.

Check pressures when the tires are cold. See "Recommended tire pressures" on page 206. Deflating air from a warm tire to the recommended pressure will result in under inflation which may be dangerous.

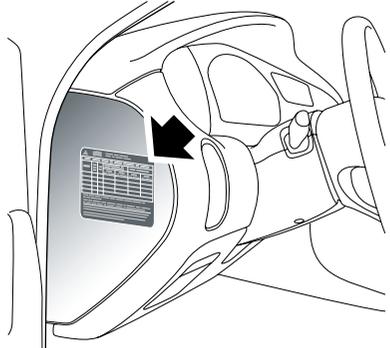
### (USA only)



JOL3377

The tire pressures for all normal operating conditions are shown on a label fixed to the pillar behind the driver's door (also known as the B pillar). For more information. See "Tire pressure label/placard (USA only)" on page 209.

### (Canada and Mexico only)



JAG0829

The tire pressures for all normal operating conditions are shown on a label fixed to the end of the fascia on the driver's side of the vehicle.



# General Information

---

## WARNINGS, CAUTIONS AND NOTES

Take particular note of WARNINGS, Cautions and Notes given throughout this handbook.



JOL2756



### **WARNING:**

**A warning is a procedure which must be followed precisely to help avoid the risk of personal injury.**

**Caution: A caution is a procedure which must be followed precisely to reduce the possibility of damage to the vehicle.**

**Note:** *A note is a procedure which will help avoid difficulties in the operation of the vehicle.*

### **Warning symbols**

On encountering the warning triangle or open book symbol on the vehicle, it is important that before touching this part of the vehicle or attempting adjustments of any kind you consult the relevant section of this handbook.

**Caution: Do not remove any warning labels from the underhood area or inside the vehicle.**

## JAGUAR DEALERS

Jaguar Dealers are chosen with care. Each is dedicated to providing a Sales, Service and Spare Parts facility of the highest standard.

Jaguar Dealers are provided with full technical support from the factory, with comprehensive training for all their technicians. Dealers' workshops operate to a high standard and have all the necessary tools and equipment essential to maintain or repair Jaguar vehicles.

### **Genuine Jaguar parts and accessories**

Your Jaguar Dealer can supply you with genuine replacement parts and accessories which are fully approved to Jaguar's original equipment specification. This will ensure that the safety and performance of your vehicle is maintained for your complete peace of mind.

Please note that fitment of non-genuine parts may invalidate the vehicle warranty if a subsequent fault occurs due to fitting sub-standard replacement parts or accessories.

### **Jaguar parts distribution service**

Jaguar Dealers stock a large number of parts to keep your vehicle maintained and get you back on the road as quickly as possible.

Their service is supported by strategically positioned Jaguar parts distribution centres throughout North America, providing next day delivery to the majority of Dealers.

# General Information

---

## Accessories

A full range of Jaguar Engineering approved accessories including safety, stowage, touring, leisure and lifestyle products is available from your Jaguar Dealer.

Please ask your Jaguar Dealer for an up-to-date brochure so you can select your requirements from the latest range.

## REGULAR SERVICING

### Maintenance

Each vehicle is given a full Pre-Delivery Inspection to ensure that all systems function correctly and that the vehicle meets its specification.

Owners are responsible for the regular maintenance and servicing of the vehicle. Jaguar Dealers will be pleased to arrange periodic servicing and can provide you with details of tasks carried out at each service interval.

Failure to implement maintenance at the recommended intervals could result in deterioration of vehicle performance and possible infringement of regulations.

Regular routine maintenance not only helps to prevent unnecessary breakdowns and inconvenience, but enhances the trade in or resale value of the vehicle.

## USA and Canada

Jaguar Dealers will arrange for appointments on a mileage/distance or time interval basis to ensure that all routine and corrective maintenance work is undertaken and recorded in the Passport to Service Booklet. This booklet not only contains a record of vital information, but also information about warranties, Jaguar Cars, Jaguar Car Clubs, Tire Manufacturers and change of ownership or address vouchers.

## Mexico

Jaguar Dealers will arrange for appointments on a mileage/distance or time interval basis to ensure that all routine and corrective maintenance work is undertaken and recorded in the Service Portfolio booklet. This booklet not only contains a record of vital information, but also information about warranty and a change of ownership card.

## Jaguar diagnostic system

Many of the vehicle systems are controlled by complex electronic devices. Specialist equipment is required to trace and rectify faults in the systems and ensure that only faulty components are repaired or renewed.

**Caution: Severe damage to the electrical system and electronic components can occur if any attempt is made to diagnose faults in the electrical system using conventional diagnostic equipment (for example, the use of test lamps or low impedance voltmeters). The fitting of any electrical accessory should only be entrusted to a Jaguar Dealer.**

# General Information

## WARRANTIES (USA AND CANADA)

The Passport to Service booklet contains warranties applicable to the vehicle, which include:

- The Limited Vehicle Warranty.
- The Emission Control System Warranty and covered parts list.
- The Corrosion Warranty.

Tires are not warranted by Jaguar Cars, but by the specific manufacturer of the tires on the vehicle. Details of tire warranties are included in the vehicle literature pack.

## WARRANTIES (MEXICO)

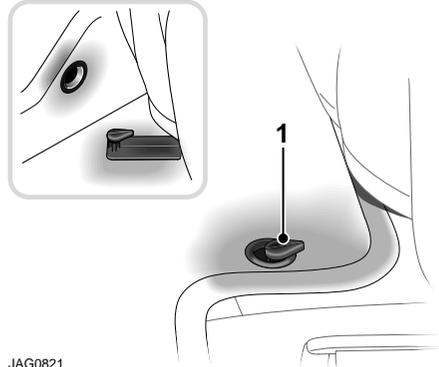
The Warranty Benefits book contains warranties applicable to the vehicle, which include:

- The Limited vehicle Warranty.
- The Emission Control System Warranty and covered parts list.
- The Corrosion Warranty.

## VEHICLE HANDBOOKS

Remember to pass on the vehicle handbooks when reselling the vehicle. Handbooks are integral parts of the vehicle.

## FLOOR MAT RETENTION



JAG0821

Ensure that the driver's floor mat is correctly positioned and secured under the tongues on the retention posts **1** (only one post shown), so that the mat does not interfere with the operation of the accelerator, clutch or brake pedals.

In particular, check the position of the mat when refitting after cleaning or servicing.

## MOBILE/PORTABLE TELEPHONES



**WARNING:**

**Using any hand-held appliance while driving can be dangerous and is illegal in some states and certain countries.**



**WARNING:**

**Always stop the vehicle before making a call and ensure that the telephone is switched off while you are driving.**

# General Information

---

## WINDOW TINTING

**Caution: For Sedan models, do not have your vehicle windows tinted with a metal oxide tinting (for maximum heat reduction from sun load) if you have a navigation system or Bluetooth phone (antenna is in the car) fitted to your vehicle.**

Metal oxide tinting prevents the reception of the Global Positioning Satellite (GPS) signals by the antenna, causing the navigation system (and possibly could affect the operation of the Bluetooth phone) to stop functioning. This does not affect Wagon models, as the antenna is located beneath the rear spoiler.

A non-metal tinting should be used if you require window tinting and if in doubt, contact your Jaguar Dealer for advice.

## LUGGAGE CARRYING



### **WARNING:**

**All items carried in the luggage area should be properly secured. Loose items can cause serious injury or death in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre.**



### **WARNING:**

**Do not use the bag hooks to secure heavy items. Items which are not properly secured can cause serious injury or death during an accident or sudden manoeuvre.**



### **WARNING:**

**When removing or replacing the loadspace floor take care that your hands and fingers are placed so that they do not become trapped between the floor and vehicle. Ensure that children are kept at a safe distance to avoid accidental injury.**

# General Information

---

## LEATHER CARE GUIDE

Leather is a natural product, therefore, it bears natural characteristics, such as grain variations, growth and brush marks. These non-weakening marks show the true nature of the hide and are the hallmarks of a leather product. Leather is an easy to maintain natural product, however, dust and substances can penetrate the pores and crease the leather, causing surface wear and brittleness.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every one to two months as follows:

- Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces at regular intervals using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over-wetting.
- If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm soapy water and then wrung out. Never allow the leather to be soaked through. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
- Use Jaguar Leather Cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

When staining (e.g., from clothing) or spillage occurs, clean the affected area immediately as described above.

It is recommended that Jaguar Leather Cleaner is used several times a year to maintain its appearance and suppleness. The Jaguar Leather Cleaner will nourish and moisturise the leather and help to improve and renew the surface protective film against dust and substances.

- Do not use solvents such as petrol (gasoline), white spirit or alcohol. Do not use detergents, furniture polish or household cleaners. Such strong treatments may give, initially, an impressive appearance, but their use will lead to rapid damage or deterioration of the natural properties of the leather. Jaguar recommends a basic set of products that have been specially selected for the type of leather in your vehicle. The Manufacturer's Warranty will be invalidated if treatments are used other than those recommended by Jaguar Cars Limited.
- Dark clothing may stain leather seats just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects such as belts, zip fasteners, rivets, etc. can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages such as tea, coffee or ink are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a valet service is used, ensure that the specialist concerned is aware of these instructions, and follows each instruction precisely.

For any further questions please consult your Jaguar Dealer for specialist advice.

# General Information

---

## **RUNNING-IN**

Apart from a few precautionary recommendations, there are no strict running-in procedures for this vehicle.

By observing the following advisory notes you will ensure maximum engine, transmission and brake life for your vehicle:

- Allow the engine to warm up thoroughly before operating at engine speeds over 3500 rev/min.
- Vary the speed frequently.
- From 940 miles (1500 kilometres) onwards, gradually increase performance of the vehicle up to the permitted maximum speed.

### **Running-in for brakes**

To ensure that the brake pads can bed-in evenly and reach their optimum wear and performance condition, usually within 300 miles (480 kilometres), the following points are recommended.

- Where possible, avoid heavy braking or rough usage of the brakes as this can result in damage being caused to the brake pads and discs.
- Avoid prolonged use of the brakes, for example, when descending severe gradients.
- Frequent light application of the brakes is desirable. This helps to fully bed-in the brake pads before the normal running-in period is completed and the vehicle is operated at high speeds, when maximum brake efficiency will be required.

The above equally applies when new discs or pads have been fitted.

### **Running-in for transmission**

To allow the transmission to uniquely adapt to the vehicle, the transmission should be operated in normal mode (i.e. sport mode switch not illuminated. See “Sports Mode” on page 127.) for the first 500 miles (800 kilometres).

## **PROTECT THE ENVIRONMENT**

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and disposal of waste cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim.

Avoid using high engine speeds. You will then protect your engine, reduce fuel consumption, lower the engine noise level and help towards reducing the environmental burden.

Dispose of batteries, tires, engine, brake and coolant fluids at your local authorised waste disposal facilities.

# General Information

---

## MODIFICATIONS FOR THE DISABLED (USA ONLY)

If you are considering modifying your vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for example by altering or adapting the driver's or passenger's seat(s) or air bag system, please contact Jaguar Cars.

**Jaguar Cars**  
**Customer Relationship Center**  
**555 MacArthur Blvd**  
**Mahwah**  
**New Jersey 07430-2327**  
**1-800-4 JAGUAR OPTION 9.**

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

It is essential that the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is quoted in all correspondence and when ordering replacement parts.

The number is visible from outside the vehicle, on a plate in the lower left edge of the windshield.

## CERTIFICATION LABEL

Vehicles have the Certification Label adhered to the left-hand rear door hinge post. Vehicle weights, paint code, manufacture date and the VIN are shown on this plate.

### Engine number

Stamped on a raised/machined boss above the oil pan seam directly behind the oil filter adapter plate.

### Transmission number

On a metal label or bar code label attached to the transmission casing.

## HEALTH AND SAFETY



### WARNING:

- **Many liquids and other substances used in vehicles are poisonous and should never be consumed and must be kept away from open wounds. These substances include anti-freeze, brake fluid, fuel, windshield washer additives, lubricants and various adhesives.**
- **The presence of any unusual fumes (for example, petrol, diesel or exhaust fumes) in the passenger compartment and/or luggage compartment should be corrected immediately by a Jaguar Dealer. If you must drive under these conditions do so only with all windows fully open.**
- **By operating other electronic equipment (for example, a mobile phone without an exterior antenna) electro-magnetic fields can cause malfunctions of the vehicle electronics. Therefore, you should observe the instructions of the equipment manufacturers.**
- **Any modifications to the fuel system not specifically designed for this Jaguar are prohibited. Such modifications in some circumstances could result in a fire. All service actions must be entrusted to a Jaguar Dealer.**
- **When working within the engine compartment, take care to avoid contact with moving parts and hot components, and ensure that any metal objects do not short circuit the battery.**

# General Information

---

- Alterations to the electrical system, including the fitting of accessories not designed for this Jaguar, will cause damage to the electrical circuits and systems. In some circumstances this could result in a malfunction or fire. All accessory work should be entrusted to a Jaguar Dealer.
- No attempt should be made to repair a fuse that has blown. Always install a new fuse of the correct amperage. Failure to comply with the above may cause a fire hazard or create serious damage elsewhere in the electrical circuit.
- Avoid contact with battery acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Acid will cause burns to the skin as well as to the eyes. In the event of skin or eye contamination, wash the affected area with water thoroughly. Seek immediate medical attention when eye contact has occurred.
- Do not disconnect any pipes in the air conditioning refrigeration system. A refrigerant is used which can cause blindness if allowed to contact the eyes. If refrigerant should contact the eyes or skin, wash the eyes or affected area with cold water for several minutes. Do not rub. As soon as possible thereafter, obtain treatment from a doctor or eye specialist.

## CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING



### WARNING:

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.



### WARNING:

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



### WARNING:

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules and seat belt pretensioners may contain Perchlorate Material -- Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

# On-board Event Data

---

## ON-BOARD EVENT DATA

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems.

In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Jaguar Cars Limited and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle.

### Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

*To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.*

# Reporting Safety Defects

---

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (USA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Jaguar Cars.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your Dealer, or Jaguar Cars.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at:

**1-888-327-4236**

**(TTY: 1-800-424-9153)**

or go to

**<http://www.safercar.gov>**

or write to:

**Administrator,  
NHTSA,  
400 Seventh Street,  
SW.,  
Washington,  
DC 20590.**

To contact Jaguar Cars, call:

**1-800 4 Jaguar**

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline and from  
<http://www.safercar.gov>.

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

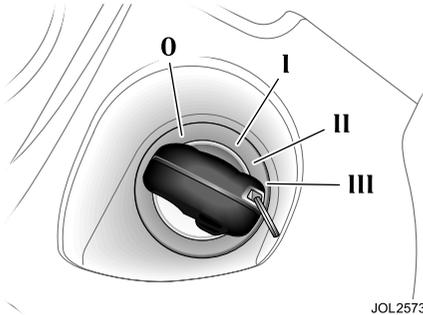
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Ford of Canada.

To contact Transport Canada, call their toll-free number:

**1-800-333-0510**

# Ignition Switch

## IGNITION SWITCH OPERATION



The ignition switch, on the right-hand side of the steering column, has four key positions:

<b>0</b>	Ignition off
<b>I</b>	Auxiliary
<b>II</b>	Ignition on
<b>III</b>	Engine start

**Position 0:** Is the only position in which the key can be inserted and removed.

**Position I:** Allows use of some electrical circuits, for example, radio operation.

**Position II:** All electrical circuits except the starter motor are activated. The key remains in this position when driving.

**Position III:** The starter motor is operated.

## TO REMOVE THE IGNITION KEY

This vehicle has a key interlock feature.

Apply the parkbrake, place the gear selector in **P** and turn the key to position **0**.

The automatic transmission gear selector must be placed in Park **P** before the key can be removed from the ignition switch. When the key is removed, the gear selector will be locked in Park.

## GEARSHIFT INTERLOCK

A brake pedal/gearshift interlock system is incorporated in the automatic transmission gear selector mechanism.

To move the gear selector from Park:

1. Turn the ignition key to position **II** or start the engine.
2. Press the brake pedal.

## STEERING COLUMN LOCK

When the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch the steering column lock is engaged. The lock is disengaged when the key is inserted into the ignition switch and turned to position **I**.

In rare circumstances it may be necessary to gently turn the steering wheel from side to side to release the steering column lock.

# Vehicle Security

---

## SECURITY OVERVIEW

When leaving the vehicle unoccupied, remember the following:

- Apply the parkbrake and with automatic transmission, move the gear selector to Park **P**.
- Do not leave children or pets in the vehicle unattended.
- Do not leave luggage or valuables on view. Always take your valuables with you or lock them in the luggage compartment.
- Remove the ignition key and spare keys, even when the vehicle is in your garage.
- Close all windows and lock all doors securely.
- Park the vehicle where it can be seen. At night, park in a well-lit area.
- When leaving the vehicle unattended, for maximum security ensure that the doors are double-locked.

Ensure that all key transmitters are removed from the vehicle before locking the doors, and that all doors, the luggage compartment and the hood are closed.

It is important to keep your keys in safe places at all times. Leaving them in conspicuous places is an invitation for a thief to steal them and, consequently, your vehicle or belongings. Keep them as secure as you would your wallet or purse, both at home and away.

## IMMOBILISER SECURITY LIGHT

This vehicle is equipped with an immobilisation system.

An electronic device is fitted in the head of each key which is programmed to the vehicle electronics. When the key is placed in the ignition switch the vehicle electronics recognise the correct key and allow engine start. The engine cannot be started with a key not programmed to the vehicle electronic systems.

If an ignition key is placed in the ignition switch and turned to position **II** and the alarm security light on the centre console remains flashing after three seconds, it is possible that the engine will not start. In any event, please contact a Jaguar Dealer to investigate the cause of the light flashing.

## KEYS

This vehicle is supplied with a key integrated with the remote transmitter. This key operates all the locks on your vehicle. Vehicles are supplied with two integrated keys.

The key number is recorded on a plastic tag which is attached to each key. Detach the tag and keep safely, not in the vehicle.

# Vehicle Security

## KEY TRANSMITTER



JAG0667

The security system is controlled remotely by a radio frequency, battery-operated transmitter.

The transmitter is activated by pressing one of the operating buttons:



Unlocks and disarms the vehicle.



Releases luggage compartment lock.



Activates the convenience headlight feature and sounds the panic alarm.



Locks/double-locks and arms the vehicle.



To free the key, press the release button. When not required press and hold the button and fold the key into the transmitter housing.

**Note:** Key transmitters will not operate if a key is in the ignition switch.

Additional key transmitters can be obtained from your Dealer and can be used provided a Dealer programmes them all to the vehicle.

**Caution:** Should a key transmitter be lost, a new one can be obtained and programmed to the vehicle by a Jaguar Dealer, who will ask for proof of vehicle ownership. It is advisable to notify a Dealer as soon as a key transmitter is lost or stolen and have the remaining key transmitter(s) reprogrammed. This will then prevent the lost or stolen key transmitter from being used to disarm and unlock the vehicle.

**Note:** Dealers keep a log of all enquiries for replacement keys and notify Jaguar Cars Limited of any such requests.

### Care of transmitters

The transmitters must be treated with care and not exposed to extremes of heat, dust, humidity or be in contact with fluids. Do not leave the transmitter exposed to direct sunlight.

The battery is the only serviceable part.

# Vehicle Security

## TRANSMITTER BATTERY RENEWAL



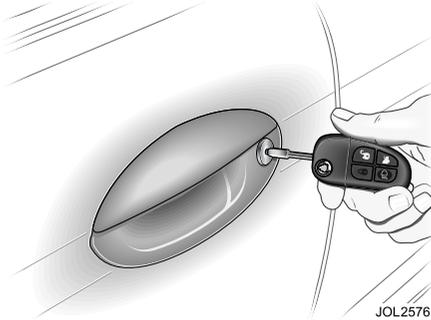
JAG0822

When the battery needs renewal there will be a significant decrease in the effective range of the key transmitter. To renew the battery, follow the procedure below:

- Insert a small, flat-blade, screwdriver at an angle of about 45 degrees, into the slot on the back of the key transmitter as shown **1**. Apply light pressure to the screwdriver and lever the screwdriver forward to separate the two halves of the key transmitter. Pull the transmitter from the key body.
- Insert the screwdriver into the slot between the transmitter covers adjacent to the key storage area as shown **2**. Apply light pressure to the screwdriver and lever the screwdriver downward to separate the covers.
- Unscrew and remove the small screw **3** and remove the printed circuit board, taking care not to touch the battery terminals. Remove the battery and dispose of it safely.
- Fit a new battery cell, type CR2032 (available from your Jaguar Dealer), with the side marked with the positive symbol (+) downwards in the battery receptacle. Avoid touching the new battery as moisture/oil from the fingers can reduce the life of the battery and corrode the contacts.
- Replace the printed circuit board making sure to engage the board under the securing tabs **4**, and secure with the screw.
- Refit the cover and click into place with thumb pressure.
- Slide the transmitter back onto the key body until it clicks into place.

# Door Locks

## OPERATION



All doors can be locked and unlocked either remotely using the key transmitter buttons, or by using the integrated key.

## SMART LOCKING

This feature helps prevent locking the key in the vehicle. If one of the front doors is open and an attempt is made to lock the doors using a door interior locking lever, all doors will become unlocked.

If the hood, luggage compartment or a door is open, the vehicle can only be locked from the outside by using a key in the driver's door lock.

It will not be possible to lock the vehicle with a key transmitter if the luggage compartment, hood or a door is open.

## VEHICLE LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

### To lock the vehicle and set alarm

- Press the lock button on the key transmitter, or;
- Put the key in the driver's door lock, turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle and release.

The direction indicators will flash once, the security light on the centre console will start flashing and, after 20 seconds, the alarm will be set.

If a door, the hood or the luggage compartment lid are open and an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, the direction indicators will flash five times and the horn will chirp twice as a warning that the vehicle is not secure.

### To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system using a key:

- Put the key in the driver's door lock, turn the key towards the front of the vehicle and release.

**Single-stage unlocking** - This unlocks all doors and the luggage compartment and turns on the interior lights.

**Two-stage unlocking** - This only unlocks the driver's door (and the Sedan luggage compartment) and turns on the interior lights. A second turn of the key is required to unlock all doors (and the Wagon tailgate).

### To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system using a key transmitter

- Press the unlock button on the key transmitter.

**Single-stage unlocking** - This unlocks all doors and the luggage compartment and turns on the interior lights.

**Two-stage unlocking** - This only unlocks the driver's door (and the Sedan luggage compartment) and turns on the interior lights. A second press of the button is required to unlock all doors (and the Wagon tailgate).

# Door Locks

## Direction indicator unlock alerts

The exterior direction indicators give two flashes as unlocking takes place.

## Selecting single-stage or two-stage unlocking

The procedure for changing from single-stage to two-stage unlocking, or vice versa, is as follows:

- Press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the key transmitter simultaneously for four seconds.

**Note:** *The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the procedure was successful.*

To revert to the previous condition, repeat the procedure described above.

## Global closing



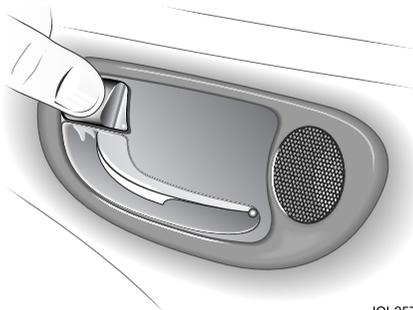
### **WARNING:**

**Ensure that no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating global closing. Safety mechanisms are in place to prevent serious injury, however, injuries can still occur.**

**Key in the driver's door:** Turn and hold in the lock position to close all the electrically operated windows (and sunroof).

**Key transmitter:** Press and hold the lock button for longer than 1½ seconds to close all the electrically operated windows (and sunroof). Pressing the button again while global closing is taking place will stop all movement.

## Internal door locking and unlocking



JOL2578

To centrally lock all doors, press the lock lever on the driver's or front passenger's door.

To lock a rear door, press the lock lever.

To unlock a front door, pull the lock lever. To open a locked front door, pull the release handle.

To unlock a rear door, pull the lock lever. To open a locked rear door, pull the lock lever and then pull the release handle.

The driver's or front passenger's door lock lever will unlock all doors.

# Door Locks

## Auto-relocking

**Note:** This feature is normally disabled. A Jaguar Dealer can enable this feature, if required.

This feature automatically centrally locks and arms the vehicle if the vehicle has been unlocked with the key transmitter:

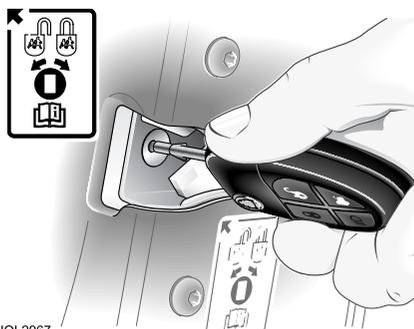
- and no door has been opened for 45 seconds or,
- if the ignition remains off for 45 seconds.

## Drive-away door locking

With the ignition key at position **II** and all doors closed, all doors will lock when the vehicle is moving above 5mph (8 km/h). If the vehicle is stopped and a door is opened, provided the engine remains running, the car will relock when the door is closed and the vehicle is moving. If the car is unlocked this feature will only lock the doors again if the ignition is turned off and then back on.

All vehicles have the drive-away door locking feature installed during manufacture. this feature can be disabled, or reinstated, by a Jaguar Dealer if required.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



Child safety locks are fitted to the rear doors.

Open a rear door, insert the ignition key into the lock and turn the key towards the outside of the vehicle. This immobilises that door interior handle. Repeat this for the opposite rear door.

After setting the child lock the door(s) can only be opened using the exterior door handle.

To remove the child lock feature, open the door and using a key, move the control to its original unlock position.

# Luggage Compartment Locks

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

### Sedan



JAG0824

If the vehicle alarm system is armed and the luggage compartment is opened using the key transmitter the alarm will not sound. The system will be rearmed when the lid is closed, provided the vehicle has not been disarmed.

To open the luggage compartment:

- Press the luggage compartment button **1** on the key transmitter or,
- With the vehicle unlocked, press the release button **2** on the luggage compartment lid.

The luggage compartment will be illuminated when the tailgate is opened.

### Wagon

Open the tailgate by pressing the release button **2** under the tailgate trim.

The tailgate can also be opened by pressing the luggage compartment button **1** on the key transmitter.

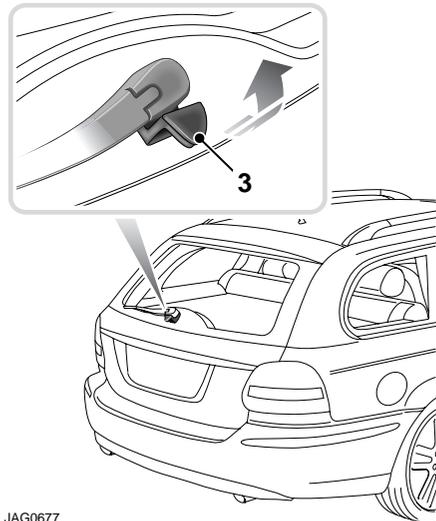
The luggage compartment will be illuminated when the tailgate is opened.

### Opening the tailgate glass



#### WARNING:

**Do not drive with the tailgate glass open as exhaust fumes can be drawn into the passenger compartment.**



JAG0677

The tailgate glass can be opened separately from the complete tailgate. Press the release button **3**, located on the reverse of the tailgate glass handle, and lift the tailgate glass.

# Luggage Compartment Locks

**Note:** *If required, the key transmitter can be reprogrammed so that button 1 will open the Wagon tailgate glass, instead of the tailgate. Contact your Jaguar Dealer to have this feature enabled.*

## Luggage compartment emergency release (Sedan only)



### WARNING:

**Keep vehicle doors and the luggage compartment locked and keep keys out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in an open trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.**



### WARNING:

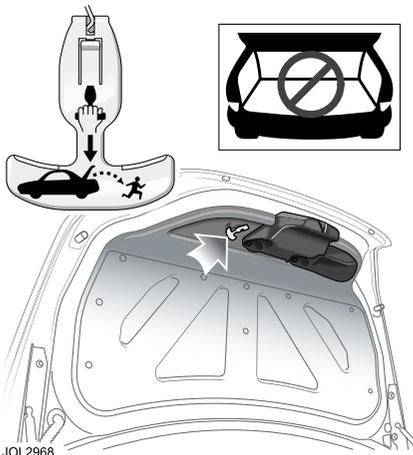
**On hot days, the temperature in the luggage compartment and vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.**

Your vehicle is equipped with a mechanical interior luggage compartment release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults in the event they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

Adults are advised to familiarise themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.

To open the luggage compartment lid from the inside, pull the illuminated T-shaped handle and push up the trunk lid. The material that the handle is made of will glow for hours in the darkness of the luggage compartment following brief exposure to ambient light.

The T-shaped handle is located on the luggage compartment door lid.



JOL2968

# Alarm Systems

---

## AUDIBLE SIGNALS

**Note:** *In certain countries, legislation prohibits the use of audible confirmation signals. In such cases, the sound source has been removed from the system.*

Two horn chirps will sound if an attempt is made to lock the vehicle with the key transmitter if a door, the hood or the luggage compartment is not fully closed.

## ERROR SIGNAL

The direction indicators will flash five times whenever one of the following conditions is present:

- Any door is open when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.
- The luggage compartment or the hood is not properly closed when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.
- If there is an electrical failure within the intrusion sensing or inclination sensing systems and an attempt to 'disarm' the security system is made.

## FULL ALARM

Once armed, any of the following circumstances will create a full alarm state, sound the horns and flash the direction indicators:

- Opening a door, luggage compartment lid or tailgate (except with transmitter) or hood.
- Using a key in the ignition switch which is not programmed to the vehicle.
- Any attempt is made to remove the radio.

## SECURITY FEATURES

The security system has been designed for:

- Prevention of theft of the vehicle.
- Prevention of theft of items from the vehicle.
- Personal security.

The security system is integrated with the vehicle electronics and engine management systems making it far more difficult for a thief to penetrate and steal the vehicle.

### Battery reconnection

If the battery has been disconnected and is subsequently reconnected, the alarm system will resume the same state as before the battery was disconnected.

If the alarm was sounding when the battery was disconnected it will sound again when the battery is reconnected and will need:

- The transmitter unlock button to be pressed or,
- Key placed in the ignition switch and turned to position **I** to disarm it.
- Alternatively, unlock the vehicle from the driver's door with a key.

# Alarm Systems

---

## Panic alarm

When in or near the vehicle, the alarm can be set off to deter a possible offender. For this feature to operate, the key must not be in the ignition switch.

Pressing the headlight convenience/panic button on the key transmitter three times within three seconds will activate the Panic Alarm.

The alarm is stopped by:

- Putting the key into the ignition switch and turning to position **II** or,
- Pressing either the transmitter panic button three times or one press of the unlock button.
- Unlocking the vehicle from the driver's door with a key.

## RADIO FREQUENCY

The radio frequency remote system operates on a frequency subject to USA Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules.

The device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS-210 of the Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the two following conditions:

- The device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The key transmitter radio frequency approval numbers for the USA and Canada are as shown below.

**USA** - NHVWB1U241.

**Canada** - 3495 103 2304.

***Note:** The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio interference or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

**Caution: The key-ring transmitter may suffer interference from other legal users of this radio frequency band, such as radio amateurs, medical equipment, remote controls or alarm systems. To lock or unlock the vehicle either use a key or operate the key-ring transmitter as close to the security antenna as possible.**

# Garage Door Opener

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER TRANSCIVER

(Where fitted)



### WARNING:

Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards. A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signalling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.



### WARNING:

When programming the transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that people, vehicles and objects are out of the way to prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will activate during the programme.

**Caution:** This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the original transmitter as well as the in-car transceiver.



JOL2373

The garage door opener transceiver is fitted in the roof console. The transceiver can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters which can be used to activate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other radio frequency operated devices.

Although this section mainly describes the procedures for a garage door opener, it also equally applies to the above mentioned applications. In some countries this feature is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

For further information, or for assistance, contact your Jaguar Dealer, or the supplier by phone or via the internet. See “INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE” on page 57.

# Garage Door Opener

## BEFORE PROGRAMMING

**Caution:** When programming a garage door opener or entry gate that may require you to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter (cycle), unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible motor failure.

For best results, it is recommended that a new battery is fitted to the hand-held transmitter of the garage door opener (or other device) before programming. If your garage door opener receiver (located in the garage) is equipped with an antenna, ensure that the antenna is hanging straight down.

## TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

For first time programming, ensure that the engine is switched off:

- Turn the ignition switch to position I.
- Press and hold the two outer buttons on the garage door opener in the overhead console. Keep the buttons pressed: the indicator light will illuminate. The indicator light is part of the middle button in the garage door opener in the overhead console.
- Release the buttons when the light begins to flash (this will take approximately 20 seconds).

All memories in the garage door opener have now been cleared.

**Note:** Do not perform this procedure when programming the additional garage door opener buttons.

## PROGRAMMING THE VEHICLE



JOL2767

Ensuring that the engine is switched off:

1. Turn the ignition switch to position I.
2. Hold the end of the original garage door opener hand-held transmitter approximately 5 to 15 cm (2 to 6 inches) away from the transceiver in the roof console, keeping the indicator light in view.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously press and hold both the desired garage door opener button on the overhead console and the hand-held transmitter button. Keep both buttons pressed. The light will flash slowly at first and then change to a fast flash. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both buttons may be released. The rapid flashing light indicates successful programming of the frequency signal.

# Garage Door Opener

---

4. If, after 60 seconds, the indicator light does not flash rapidly, release both the transceiver and the hand-held transmitter buttons and repeat the procedure starting with Step 2. Position the hand-held transmitter at a different angle and/or distance.
5. Press and hold the programmed garage door opener button and observe the indicator light:
  - If the indicator light is solid/continuous, programming is complete and your device should activate when the garage door opener button is pressed and held for approximately 1 to 2 seconds and then released.
  - If the indicator light blinks rapidly for 2 seconds and then turns a solid/continuous light, proceed with the following programming instructions for a rolling code equipped device.
3. Return to the vehicle and firmly press and hold the programmed garage door opener button for 2 seconds and release.
4. Repeat the press/hold/release sequence 3 times to complete the training process.

The garage door opener in the overhead console should now activate the rolling code device.

## Reprogramming a single garage door opener button

To programme a device to a previously trained button:

1. Press and hold the desired pre-programmed garage door opener button for at least 20 seconds, but no longer than 30 seconds, until the indicator light begins to flash.
2. Without releasing the overhead console button, position the hand-held transmitter approximately 5 to 15 cm (2 to 6 inches) away from the garage door opener surface, keeping the indicator light in view.
3. Carry out Step 3 of Programming the Vehicle. See "PROGRAMMING THE VEHICLE" on page 55.

**Note:** To programme additional garage door opener buttons, begin at Step 2.

## Rolling code equipped device programming

**Note:** A second person may make the following steps quicker and easier as once the button has been pressed there are 30 seconds only in which to complete Step 3.

At the garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) in the garage, locate the learn or smart button/switch.

1. The name of the button/switch may vary between manufacturers.
2. Press and release the learn or smart button.

## Entry gate/Canadian programming

The technology of some entry gates requires you to press and re-press (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button every two seconds during programming.

Continue to press and hold the desired overhead console button while you cycle your hand-held transmitter until the indicator light flashes rapidly.

# Garage Door Opener

---

## INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

If you would like additional information on the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver, compatible products or to purchase other accessories such as the HomeLink® lighting package, contact your Jaguar Dealer, or HomeLink at 1-800-355-3515 or on the Internet at [www.homelink.jci.com](http://www.homelink.jci.com).

**Note:** *Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.*

**Caution:** **It is recommended that when you sell or dispose of the vehicle, the programmed transceiver button memories be erased for security purposes.**

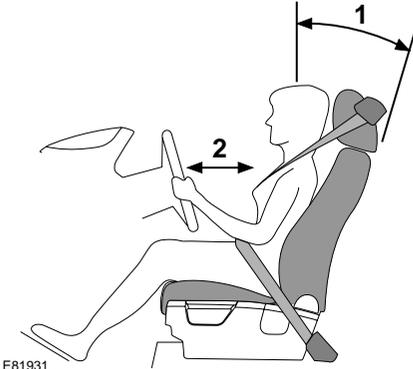
**Note:** *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

### Approval for radio transceiver

Country	Approval Number
USA	CB2JAGHL3

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



### WARNING:

**Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**

The seat, head restraint, seat belt and air bags, all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components will give you greater protection, therefore you should observe the following points:

1. Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible and the seatback reclined no more than 30 degrees.
  2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254 mm (10 inches) is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel air bag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position with your arms slightly bent.
- Adjust the head restraint so that its highest point is level with the top of your head.
  - Position the seatbelt so that it is mid-way between your neck and your shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across your hips, not across your stomach.
  - Ensure that your driving position is comfortable, and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

# Seats

## FRONT SEAT CONTROLS

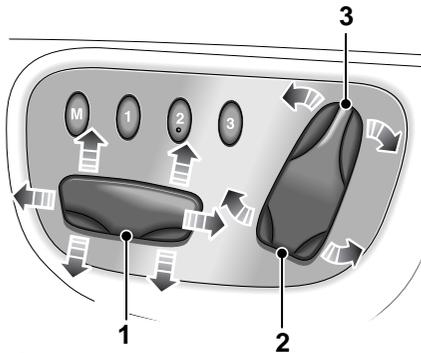
A key does not have to be in the ignition switch for seat adjustment.

**Note:** All control switches are located on the side of the seat valance.

## DRIVER'S SEAT ADJUSTMENT (WITH MEMORY)

This facility allows the positions of the driver's seat and door rear view mirrors to be memorised and recalled for different occupants.

Up to three settings can be stored. The switch pack is located towards the front of the driver's seat base, next to the driver's door.



JAG0770

### Setting a memorised position

1. Controls the seat position. To move the seat forward or rearward - move the switch forwards or rearwards. Front/rear of cushion raise/lower - move the front or rear of the switch up or down. If both front and rear are raised or lowered together, the whole seat cushion will rise or fall.

2. Controls the lumbar support (where fitted). Push the bottom of the switch rearwards or forwards to increase or decrease lumbar support.
3. Controls the seat back angle. Tilt the top of the switch rearwards or forwards to recline or raise the seat back angle.

### To store a driving position in the memory:

1. Adjust the seat and door mirrors to the desired positions.
2. Push the memory button **M** (see previous illustration). A chime will sound.
3. Within 5 seconds of pushing the **M** button, push button **1**, **2** or **3** to memorise the configuration. A double chime will sound, and, if the ignition is on, a message will be displayed in the message centre to indicate that the procedure was successful.

By repeating these three steps and pressing the unused buttons, two more driving positions can be stored in the memory.

To set a new driving position, adjust the driver's seat and door mirrors and perform steps 2 and 3. The previous memory will be erased and the new position will be stored.

**Note:** Button **M** is concave, and there is a raised point on button **2**. This allows the buttons to be identified by touch.

# Seats

## Recalling a memorised position

Ensure the gear selector lever is in position **P** and the parkbrake is on.

Press and release the appropriate memory button (**1**, **2** or **3**). The seat and door mirrors will move automatically to the memorised position.

If the door mirror or seat position switches are operated whilst the seat and door mirrors are repositioning, the process will be cancelled. Press the memory button again to resume.

**Note:** The memory function will only operate if the automatic transmission is set to **P**.

## Passenger seat

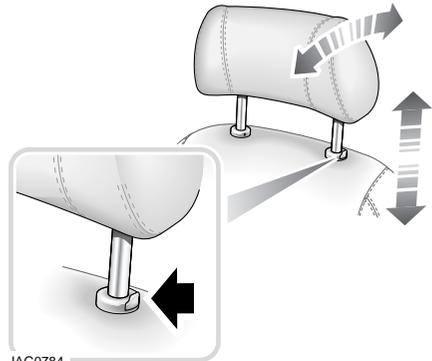
The passenger seat is adjusted in the same way as the driver's seat, but is not fitted with memory buttons.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS



### WARNING:

**Adjust the head restraint so that it is just behind your head and never behind your neck.**



JAG0784

Each front head restraint can be adjusted to give the correct height for the seat occupant. They may also be manually tilted.

**To lower:** Press the lever in the escutcheon and push the head restraint into the seat back to the required height.

**To raise:** Pull the head restraint upwards.

## Rear centre head restraint

The rear centre head restraint has two positions only. It can be stowed within the seat back when not in use and should be extended when an occupant is in the centre seat.

# Seats

---

## FRONT SEAT HEATERS

(Where fitted)



JAG0714

Each front seat back and cushion has a heater controlled by a switch on the centre console.

With the ignition switch in position **II**, press the switch to turn the heaters on.

The first press will heat the seat to a high temperature setting, a second press will heat the seat to a lower setting.

A third press will turn the seat heater off.

A light within the switch will show when the heater is on, red for the high heat setting and yellow for the lower setting.

The heater will automatically switch off:

- After it has been on for 10 minutes.
- If the ignition is turned off.
- If a fault is detected.

The heater will maintain a preset temperature while it is switched on.

Storage of the vehicle in a heated garage, body heat or warm ambient temperatures may prevent operation of the seat heater.

# Occupant Protection

---

## SEAT BELTS



### WARNING:

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.



### WARNING:

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.



### WARNING:

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.



### WARNING:

The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.



### WARNING:

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.



### WARNING:

Belts should not be worn with the straps twisted.



### WARNING:

Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt. In an impact the pressure from the seat belt on such items can cause them to break, which in turn may cause death or serious injuries.



### WARNING:

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



### WARNING:

The occupants of the front seats should not travel with the seat back at more than 30 degrees from upright. Doing so will reduce the protection afforded by the seat belt.



### WARNING:

Seat belts should be worn at all times, by the driver and passengers in all seating positions. The air bag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

# Occupant Protection

---



## **WARNING:**

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.



## **WARNING:**

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.



## **WARNING:**

If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a Jaguar Dealer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.



## **WARNING:**

When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, take care to ensure that the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.

## **Caring for seat belts**

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts, or wear to the webbing, and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.

## **Testing inertia reel belts**

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact your Jaguar Dealer.

**Note:** *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is not a fault, and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.*

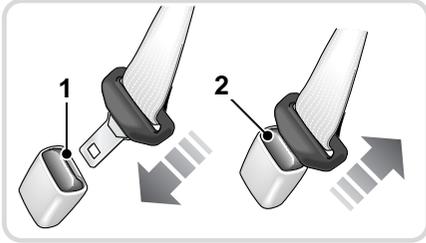
# Occupant Protection

## SEAT BELT FITTING



### WARNING:

Do not adjust the seat belt while driving.



JAG0678

Draw the tongue of the seat belt over the shoulder, across the chest and push it into the buckle unit slot **1**. A positive click indicates that it is safely locked.

Always ensure that the webbing is midway between the neck and the edge of the shoulder. Correct tension is controlled by automatic retraction of the reel.



A warning indicator on the instrument panel comes on when the driver's seat belt is not fastened.

**Note:** In some countries a warning signal may also sound for six seconds.

### Belt buckle release

To release the belt buckle, press the release button **2** in the buckle unit and allow the seat belt to fully retract.

**Note:** When releasing the seat belt it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This will prevent the belt from retracting too quickly.

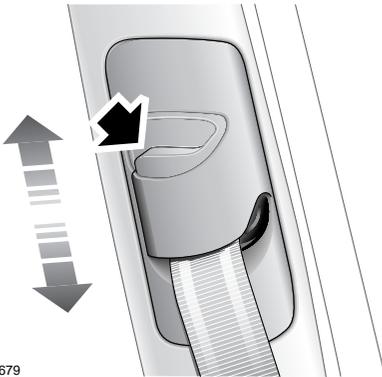
# Occupant Protection

## Front belt height adjustment



### WARNING:

Correct seat belt adjustment is essential for safety and comfort. Ensure that the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving the vehicle. Do not attempt to adjust the seat belt height once the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause you to lose control of the vehicle, or incorrectly adjust the seat belt.



JAG0679

**To operate:** Press the locking button and slide the anchorage point to the required position to ensure comfort and safety. Release the button and check that the anchorage point is locked.

Always check the anchorage point after the seat has been adjusted to ensure that the belt is correctly positioned.

## Using seat belts during pregnancy



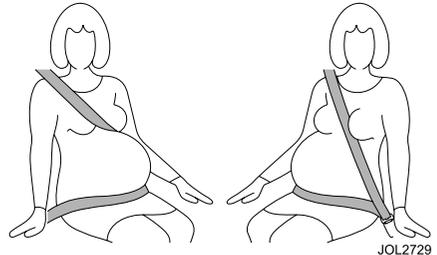
### WARNING:

Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap whilst using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.



### WARNING:

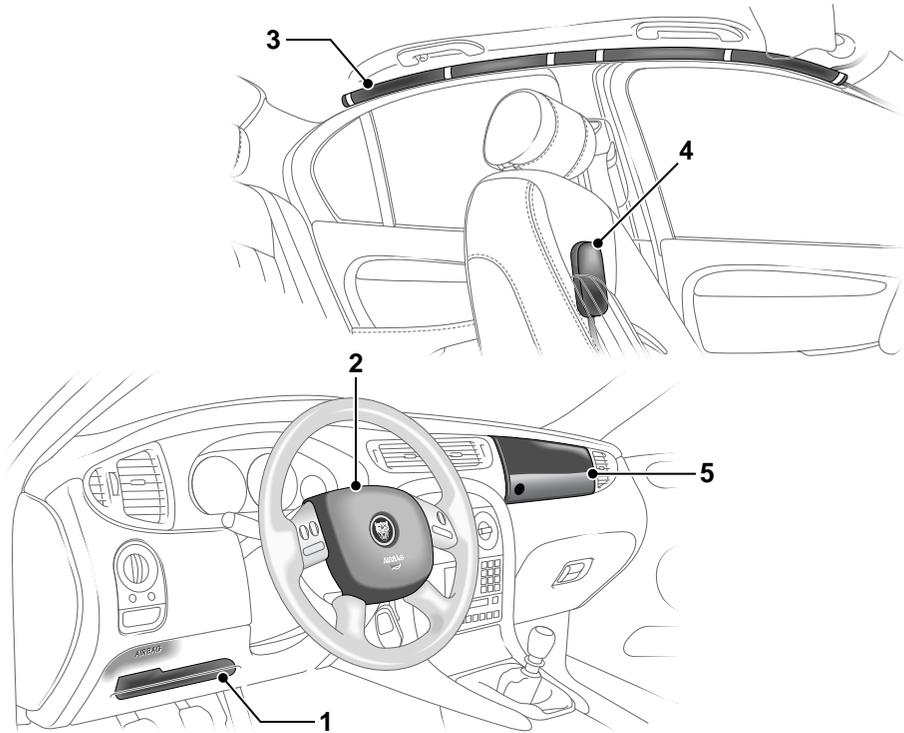
Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.



Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen. Ensure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

# Occupant Protection

## AIR BAGS



JAG0808

1. Driver's knee air bag.
2. Driver's air bag.
3. Curtain air bag (left-hand side and right-hand side).
4. Seat mounted side air bag (left-hand and right-hand front seats).
5. Front passenger air bag.

# Occupant Protection

---



## WARNING:

No objects whatsoever should be attached to the centre cover of the steering wheel, the passenger facia panel, the sides of the front seats or the interior trim immediately above the door openings. Do not put anything on or over the air bag inflation area. Placing objects on or over the air bag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the air bag into your face and torso causing serious injury.



## WARNING:

Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after they have deployed.



## WARNING:

Air bags inflate at high speeds, and can cause injuries. To minimise the risk of injury, ensure that all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as practical.



## WARNING:

Air bag inflation takes place instantaneously, and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

## Front air bags



## WARNING:

**Driver and front seat passenger should always move their seats as far rearwards as is practical.**

With a front impact of sufficient force, the restraints system will trigger the front air bag(s) and seat belt pretensioners.

Both front air bags use dual inflation technology which means that if activated, the bag(s) will deploy at either a normal or reduced level of inflation, depending on crash severity. See “AIR BAGS” on page 66. The lower level is also selected if the driver is close to the steering wheel.

In certain conditions, e.g. where no passenger is present, the appropriate air bags will be deactivated: in a collision these air bags would not be deployed.

**Note:** *Front air bags are designed to inflate in frontal and near frontal collisions, not low speed impacts, roll-over, side-impact or rear-impact.*

# Occupant Protection

---

## Driver's knee air bag



### WARNING:

The driver's knee air bag will not deploy if the driver's seat is near to its fully forward position. Do not sit too close to the steering wheel.



### WARNING:

Do not attach any objects whatsoever to the driver's knee air bag panel; it could cause injury in the event of a collision. Consult your Jaguar Dealer before installing any accessories in the driver's facia area (e.g. hands-free telephone kits).

The driver's knee air bag provides an additional method of restraining the driver in the event of a frontal or near-frontal collision. See "AIR BAGS" on page 66.

The driver's knee air bag is located in the panel below the steering column and will normally deploy at the same time as the driver's air bag.

## Side protection



### WARNING:

For the air bags to operate correctly the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to your Jaguar Dealer as soon as possible for examination and repair.



### WARNING:

Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the air bags by placing any part of their person, or any objects, in contact with, or close to, an air bag module. Air bags deploy at very high speeds, and can cause serious injury or death if objects or occupants are within the area of deployment.

The side protection system utilizes four air bags: one mounted in each of the front seats, and two curtain air bags located in the upper environment just above the door opening.

When the seat mounted side air bag inflates upon a vehicle side impact, it breaks through the seat bolster stitching, protecting the side of the rib cage of the driver or front seat passenger.

When the curtain air bag inflates upon a vehicle side impact, it breaks through the headlining and deploys downwards, giving head protection to front and rear seat occupants.

The air bags, in combination with the seat belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

# Occupant Protection

## OCCUPANT SENSING



JAG0809

The air bag status indicator (occupant sensing) is located on the passenger facia.

The sensor measures the weight on the cushion and changes the passenger air bag deployment status.

The occupant sensor operates as follows:

Seat occupancy status	Passenger airbag status	Status indicator on
Completely empty	Deactivated	No*
Low weight occupant/object	Deactivated	Yes
Heavy occupant/object	Activated	No
Child restraint fitted	Deactivated	Yes**

\*It is possible that the air bag status indicator will illuminate intermittently when the seat is empty. This is part of the system's adaptive behaviour, and does not affect the status of the passenger air bag. However, if the status indicator is permanently illuminated when the seat is definitely empty, then contact your nearest Jaguar Dealer immediately.

\*\*In some cases a small child placed in a child seat will not activate the 'Pass Air Bag Off' lamp. If this occurs, the passenger air bag status will be as described above for an empty seat, i.e. passenger seat air bag 'Not Active' but the 'Pass Air Bag Off' lamp will not illuminate.

# Occupant Protection

## AIR BAG WARNING LAMP



### WARNING:

If the warning indicator signals that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat. Doing so will increase the risk of death or serious injury to the child.



The air bag warning indicator in the driver's instrument pack will be lit for approximately six seconds when the starter switch is turned on.

If the indicator remains illuminated or flashes, it indicates a fault within the air bag electrical circuits. Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer immediately.

It is safe to drive the vehicle; however, in an accident the air bags may not operate.

It is safe to drive the vehicle, however, in an accident the air bags may not operate.

The following components are monitored by the air bag system.

- Driver's dual-stage air bag (steering wheel)
- Driver's side thorax air bag
- Driver's pretensioner
- Driver's side crash sensor - 2 off
- Passenger's dual-stage air bag
- Passenger's side thorax air bag
- Passenger's pretensioner
- Passenger's side crash sensor - 2 off
- Passenger's seat occupant sensor
- Restraint control module.

## AIR BAG WARNING LABEL

A warning label on each sun visor contains the following statement:



### WARNING:

#### EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS

- Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.
- The back seat is the safest place for children.
- Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.
- Always use seat belts and child restraints.
- See Owner's Manual for more information about air bags.



JAG0680

# Occupant Protection

---

## AIR BAG SERVICE INFORMATION



### WARNING:

For your safety a Jaguar Dealer must carry out any of the following tasks.

Removal, replacement, repair, or modification, of any wiring or component in the vicinity of the SRS components, including the steering wheel, steering column, door trim, roof lining, instrument pack and instrument panel.

Installation of electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio or in-car entertainment system.

Modification to the front or side of the vehicle, including the bumper and chassis.

Attachment of accessories to the front or side of the vehicle.

In addition, always contact your Jaguar Dealer if:

- An air bag inflates.
- A seat belt pre-tensioner activates.
- The front or side of the vehicle is damaged, even if the air bag has not inflated.
- Any part of the air bag module cover shows signs of cracking or damage.
- Any trim containing an air bag - front seat back, headlining or pillar trims - becomes damaged.

## Air bag disposal



### WARNING:

Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the air bag system or its electrical fuses. All work on the air bag system, including renewal after deployment must be carried out by an authorised Jaguar Dealer.

In the event of the vehicle being dismantled, air bag module removal and disposal must be made by a qualified person. Instructions can be obtained from a Jaguar Dealer.

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY OVERVIEW



### WARNING:

Do not use a child restraint on a seat with an operational air bag in front of it. There is a risk of death or serious injury when the air bag deploys. The best place for a child, is properly restrained in the rear seats.



### WARNING:

Do not use a forward facing child seat, until a child is above the minimum weight of 9 kg (20 lb.) and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.



### WARNING:

Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as 30 times, making it impossible to hold on to the child. Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash, if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.



### WARNING:

Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seat back. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.



### WARNING:

**Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it. There is a risk of serious injury or death when the air bag deploys.**

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety, it is very important that all infants and children under 12 are restrained in a suitable child safety seat appropriate to their age and size.

*Note: Crash statistics show that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than they are in the front.*

If a child must travel in the front passenger seat, Jaguar recommends the following:

1. Position the seat fully rearward.
2. Adjust the lumbar to its minimum.
3. Adjust the cushion to its highest position.
4. Set cushion rake to its lowest position.
5. Set seat belt upper anchorage to its lowest position.



E82664

This symbol, affixed to the passenger side of the fascia, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat when a passenger air bag is operational.

# Child Safety

---

## Choosing a suitable child seat

Before you buy a child seat, it is important to note that your child's weight, rather than age, determines the type of seat that is required.

### **Jaguar recommends that a rear-facing seat with a harness is used for as long as your infant's development allows.**

Avoid travelling with your infant forward-facing until they are between 9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lbs) and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of 2, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.

### **Always use the top tether to secure a forward-facing child seat where possible. See "Child restraint top tether anchorages and brackets" on page 77.**

## Booster cushions

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat but is still too small to safely use just the three point belt, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use, then adjust the seat belt to suit.

## LATCH seats

LATCH (**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **C**hild restraints) child seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that can connect to two anchors provided at specific seating positions in your vehicle. This eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure this type of child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the anchor point located on the parcel shelf.

The vehicle has LATCH anchors to install a child seat in either of the rear outboard seating positions. See "LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM" on page 74.

## Automatic Locking Reels (ALR)

All passenger seat belts have a special locking mechanism which aids the retention of child seats.

The procedure to install a child seat is as follows:

1. Place the child seat in the vehicle, attach the seat belt and secure the buckle in accordance with the manufacturer's fitting instructions.
2. Pull on the shoulder section of the belt to reel out all of the remaining webbing to the limit of its travel. This will engage the automatic locking feature, which then acts as a ratchet, allowing the webbing only to retract.
3. Allow the seat belt to retract onto the child seat (a clicking sound will confirm that the ratchet has engaged), while firmly pushing the child seat into the vehicle seat.
4. Ensure that there is no slack in the seat belt by pulling upwards on the shoulder belt immediately above the child restraint. The seat belt should now be locked and the child seat held firmly in position.

When the child seat is removed and all of the seat belt webbing is allowed to retract, the ALR reverts to normal operation.

**Note:** *Where possible, use the seat belt ALR to secure large items of luggage that are to be carried on the seats. In the event of an accident, unsecured items become missiles capable of causing serious injury.*

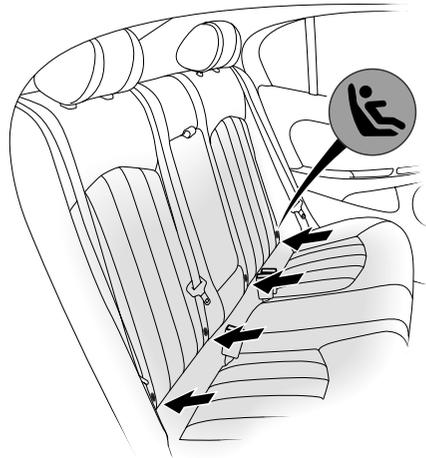
# Child Safety

## Check list - non-LATCH child restraints

Follow the check list each time your child travels in the vehicle:

- Always attach the top tether when installing a forward-facing seat.
- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Always use the appropriate child restraints and adjust harnesses for every child, every trip.
- Avoid dressing your child in bulky clothing and do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit of your child seat and replace seats or harnesses that show signs of wear.
- Ensure that you have removed all slack from the adult seat belt and the automatic locking device is activated.
- No child seat is completely child-proof. Encourage your child not to play with the buckle or harness.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in the vehicle.
- Activate the rear door child safety locks. See “CHILD SAFETY LOCKS” on page 49.
- Ensure your child does not exit the vehicle from the side where there is traffic.
- Set a good example for your child - always wear your seat belt.

## LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM



JOL4000

The LATCH system allows LATCH-compatible child seats to be secured directly and easily to the vehicle body without the use of adult seat belts.

Many injuries to children in accidents are caused by the incorrect fitting and tensioning of the adult seat belts, which are normally used to secure child seats. The LATCH system reduces the likelihood of incorrect fitting and is also quicker and simpler to use.

The LATCH system uses two anchorage loops and a top tether bracket fixed to the vehicle body. The LATCH child seats lock onto the anchorage loops using either two straps with clips, or two extendable legs. The child seats are also fitted with a strap that clips onto the top tether bracket.

# Child Safety

---

The anchorage loops are accessible through the gap between the rear seat back and cushion. Always ensure the child seat anchorage straps or legs and the vehicle anchorage loops are kept clean and free of dirt.



This symbol on the seats indicates the location of the LATCH lower anchorages.

The lower anchorages are located approximately 60 mm (2.5 inches) below each label.

To ensure a LATCH child seat is installed safely, read all the information provided.

## Check list - LATCH child restraints

Follow the check list each time your child travels in the vehicle:

- **Always attach the top tether when installing a forward-facing seat.**
- Carefully follow the instructions supplied with the child seat.
- Always give the seat a final pull to ensure the lower anchors are secure, even if the seat has indicators to show that the seat connectors are latched.
- Always use the appropriate child restraints and adjust harnesses for every child, every trip.
- Make sure you use a seat with the correct weight range for your child.
- Avoid dressing your child in bulky clothing and do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit of your child seat and replace seats or harnesses that show signs of wear.
- No child seat is completely child-proof. Encourage your child not to play with the buckle or harness.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in the vehicle.
- Activate the rear door child safety locks. See “CHILD SAFETY LOCKS” on page 49.
- Ensure your child does not exit the vehicle from the side where there is traffic.
- Set a good example for your child - always wear your seat belt.

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING A LATCH SEAT



### WARNING:

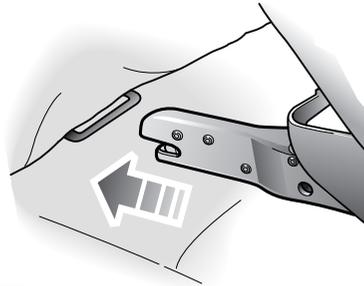
The top tether must always be used to secure the LATCH child seat. Refer to the following Section.

Consult your Jaguar Dealer to obtain a LATCH compatible seat.

**Caution: When fitting a LATCH child seat, the seat manufacturer's instructions must always be followed. The following is a guide only.**

LATCH seats can only be installed in the rear outboard seating positions. If necessary, remove the headrest.

## LATCH seat with anchorage legs



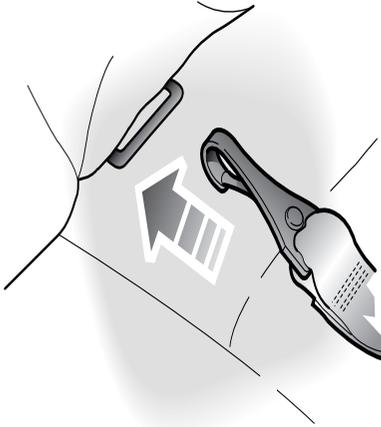
JAG0838

Fit the seat as follows:

1. Make sure the adult seat belts and buckles do not become trapped behind the child seat.
2. Make sure there is nothing obstructing the seat mounting mechanism at the anchorage points.
3. Ensure the hook at the end of each leg is open.
4. Position the attachment legs just in front of the LATCH anchorage loops (see previous diagram). Push the anchorage leg to engage with the vehicle's anchorage loop. There should be an audible click.
5. Repeat Step 4 for the seat's second anchorage leg.
6. Using firm and even pressure on both sides, push the child seat rearwards until it is secured firmly against the seat back. Make sure you do NOT trap the top tether strap behind the child seat.
7. Attach the top tether, refer to the following section.
8. As a final check, firmly pull both sides of the seat to confirm that it is correctly fixed in position.

# Child Safety

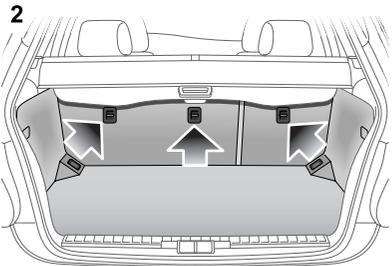
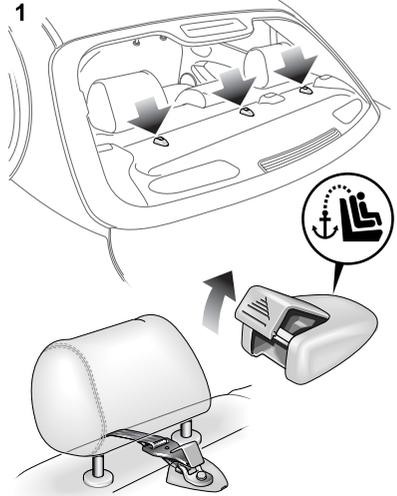
## LATCH seat with tether straps



JAG0839

Clip the flexible lower straps to the two LATCH loops. Adjust the length of each strap until the seat is held firmly against the vehicle seat back.

## Child restraint top tether anchorages and brackets



JOL3010

The top of the child seat is connected by a short strap to the top tether bracket to prevent the seat from rotating about the lower anchorages.

# Child Safety

---

**Sedan:** The top tether brackets are positioned on the rear parcel shelf **1**, under access covers, at the centre-line of the outboard rear seating positions.

Pass the top tether strap under the vehicle rear head restraint to connect to the top tether bracket on the parcel shelf. Adjust the length of the top tether strap to hold the top of the child seat against the vehicle seat back.

**Wagon:** The top tether brackets are positioned on the rear of the seat back **2**.

Remove the luggage cover. See “Removing the luggage cover” on page 89. Pass the top tether strap under the vehicle rear head restraint to connect to the top tether bracket on the rear of the seat back. Adjust the length of the top tether strap to hold the top of the child seat against the vehicle seat back. If required, refit the luggage cover.



**WARNING:**

**The top tether must not be routed over the luggage cover; it must pass between the luggage cover and the seat back.**

For all vehicles, make sure the child seat is securely fitted, and follow the check list below.



**WARNING:**

**Do not install a LATCH child seat with flexible lower attachments in the vehicle centre seat position. The anchorage loops are only provided to install a compatible child seat in the vehicle outboard seat positions.**



**WARNING:**

**Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY SEAT - PROPER USE CHART

<b>PROPER CHILD SAFETY SEAT USE CHART</b>			
Buckle Everyone. Children Age 12 and Under in Back.			
	<b>INFANTS</b>	<b>TODDLER</b>	<b>YOUNG CHILDREN</b>
<b>WEIGHT</b>	Birth to 1 year at least 9 to 10 kg (20 to 22 lb).	Over 1 year and Over 9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb).	Over 18 kg (40 lb) Ages 4 to 8, unless 145 cm (4 ft 9 inches).
<b>TYPE of SEAT</b>	Infant only or rear facing, convertible.	Convertible / Forward-facing.	Belt positioning booster seat.
<b>SEAT POSITION</b>	Rear-facing only.	Forward-facing.	Forward-facing.
<b>ALWAYS MAKE SURE</b>	Children to 1 year and at least 9 kg (20 lb) in rear-facing seats. Harness straps at or below shoulder level.	Harness straps should be at or above shoulders. Most seats require top slot for forward-facing.	Belt positioning booster seats must be used with both lap and shoulder belt. Make sure the lapbelt fits low and tight across the lap/upper thigh area and the shoulder belt fits snug crossing the chest and shoulder to avoid abdominal injuries.
<b>WARNING</b>	All children aged 12 and under should ride in the back seat.	All children aged 12 and under should ride in the back seat.	All children aged 12 and under should ride in the back seat.

# Clock

## CLOCK ADJUSTMENT

The position of the digital clock depends on the equipment fitted to the vehicle.

If a touch-screen is fitted to the vehicle, the clock will be incorporated in the touch-screen display.

If the vehicle is not equipped with a touch-screen, the clock is included in the audio display.

### Note:

- For more information concerning the operation of the audio system controls, refer to the audio systems handbook.
- For more information concerning the operation of the touch-screen, refer to the touch-screen display handbook.

### Vehicles without touch-screen



JAG0805

If the vehicle is not fitted with a touch-screen, adjust the clock using the audio system controls as follows:

1. Press and hold **MODE** until **TA VOLUME** is displayed.
2. Repeatedly press **MODE** until **CLOCK SET** is displayed.
3. To select 12 or 24 hour format, press the seek up/seek down keys.
4. Press **MODE** to continue.

5. If 12 hour is selected, use # to denote AM or PM.
6. Use the key pad to enter the time in four digit format.
7. To exit, press and hold **MODE** until the display reverts to audio mode.

### Vehicles with touch-screen



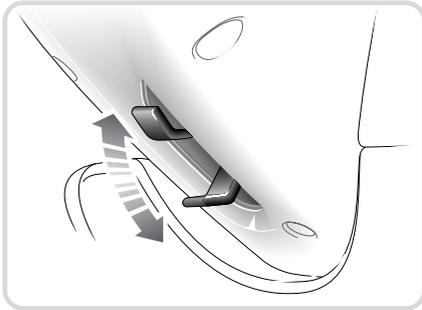
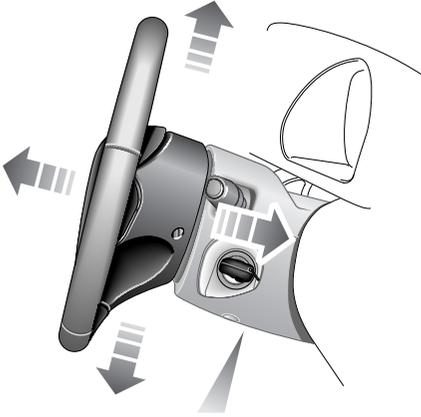
JAG0804

If the vehicle is fitted with a touch-screen, the clock is adjusted as follows:

1. Press the **MENU** button on the touch-screen control panel. The system menu screen will be displayed.
2. Touch the **System Setup** button on the **MENU** screen.
3. Touch the **Set Clock** button on the **SYSTEM SETUP** screen.
4. Clock adjustment is made by touching the hour or minute, up or down arrow buttons.
5. Touch the **12/24** button to select twelve or twenty-four hour display.
6. Confirm your setting by touching **Set**.

# Steering Column

## COLUMN RELEASE LEVER



JAG0712



**WARNING:**  
**Do not adjust the steering column whilst driving.**

The steering column can be adjusted for reach and height.

Holding the steering wheel, push the release lever fully downwards.

Move the steering wheel up or down and in or out as required, for a comfortable, safe driving position.

After adjustment, fully raise the lever to lock the steering wheel in position.

# Door Windows

## WINDOW SWITCHES



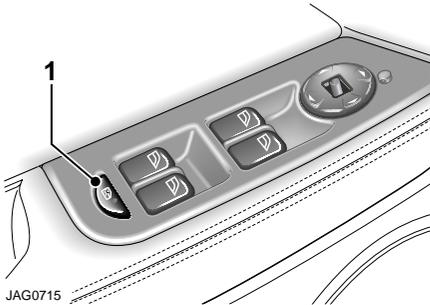
### WARNING:

When raising windows ensure all occupants are clear.



### WARNING:

When leaving the vehicle take the ignition keys to prevent misuse of the window switches by remaining occupants, especially children.



Switches on the driver's door switch pack control the driver and passenger door windows.

The passengers are provided with a switch to control their door window only.

## ELECTRIC WINDOW OPERATION

These switches will only operate the window when the ignition switch is in position II.

Button (1) immobilises the rear window switches preventing passengers from operating their windows. The button integral red light will be lit when the rear windows cannot be operated by the rear seat passengers.

## Operation

To lower a window, press down the switch to its first position and hold until the desired position is reached, then release.

To close a window, pull the switch upwards to its first position and hold until the desired position is reached, then release.

If the switches are held for longer than 6 seconds, for example, when attempting to overcome frozen or jammed windows, the window drive will be switched off for a few seconds to protect the window drive motors.

## One-touch operation

Each window has a one-touch facility enabling the occupant to fully open or close the window in one quick movement. Pulling, or pressing, the switch to its second position and quickly releasing will close or open the window in one movement. Window travel can be stopped at any time by pressing the switch again.

## Wind resonance with lowered windows

If a resonance (booming sound) occurs with the rear windows open, lower the front windows about 1.5 cm (half an inch). This will eliminate the noise, by altering the frequency of the air moving in and out of the vehicle.

# Door Windows

---

## WINDOW ANTI-TRAP FEATURE

Each electrically operated window has an anti-trap feature. If the upward movement of the window detects an obstacle the anti-trap feature will immediately stop the window closing, then move it downwards for a short distance.



### **WARNING:**

**If the battery is disconnected or discharged the window anti-trap feature is lost. When the battery is reconnected or recharged the window anti-trap feature must be reset.**

### **Resetting the electrically operated windows anti-trap feature**

- Fully close the window, hold the switch in the close position for two seconds and then release the switch. Wait for two seconds, do not open the window.
- Again, select the same window to close, holding the switch for a further two seconds.
- Check to confirm the operation by opening the window and then use one-touch operation to close the window.
- Repeat for the remaining electrically operated windows.

### **Overriding the anti-trap protection**

The anti-trap system will also stop the window closing if a blockage or resistance occurs e.g. in the window guide channels. Typically this might be due to icing in winter but could also be caused by damage or misalignment of the guide channels or seals.

To override the anti-trap action:

- After the initial attempt to close the window, operate the close switch a second time.
- When the window has reversed from the blockage, operate the switch (within 10 seconds) until the window stops again (it will not reverse on the third attempt).
- Immediately operate the close switch again. The window will now move up a short distance with increased force to override the blockage.
- Repeat the override action until the window has closed. Each time the window stops, the switch must be operated immediately to initiate further override action.

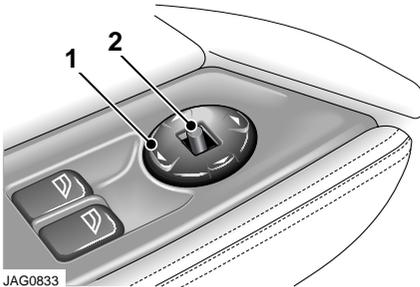
If this procedure fails to move the blockage, the anti-trap feature will be lost and must be reset (see first column) after the blockage has been cleared.

### **Thermal overload**

If the windows are repeatedly opened and closed (e.g. by a child), a protection system will deactivate window operation for a short period to avoid overheating of the window motors.

# Mirrors

## DOOR REAR VIEW MIRRORS



Both door mirrors are adjusted from the driver's door switchpack. The four-way adjustment button **1** moves the mirrors to the required position. The selector switch **2** selects the mirror to be moved, left for the left-hand side mirror and right for the right-hand side mirror. When the selector switch is in the centre position, adjustment to either mirror is inhibited.

Each mirror housing, except the power fold back door mirror, is designed to pivot against the vehicle upon impact. To return the mirror to its normal position, reposition the housing until it locks into place.

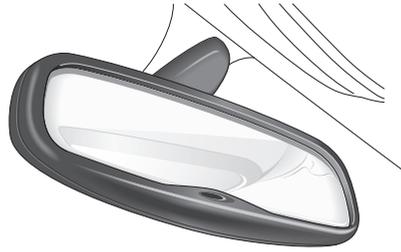
The right-hand mirror is convex, providing a wider field of vision. As a result, objects viewed in the mirror are closer than they appear.

### Mirror heating

The door mirrors have heating elements which work when the rear windshield heater is switched ON. The mirror heater will clear all ice from the mirror surface.

**Caution: Do not use a scraper to remove ice from the mirrors as this will damage the surface.**

## INTERIOR REAR VIEW MIRROR



JAG0718

The rear view mirror darkens automatically to prevent glare from a following vehicle's headlamps. The mirror clears when light levels return to normal. The mirror also clears when reverse gear is selected.

### Note:

- *Should a mirror assembly become detached from the windshield, it must be refitted by a Jaguar Dealer.*
- *Ensure that the windshield in front of the mirror is kept clean. The moisture sensor for wiper operation is located on the front of the mirror casing, so any dirt may affect the operation of this sensor.*
- *The automatic darkening of the mirror will not operate properly if the light that would otherwise strike the mirror is obstructed.*

# Luggage Compartment

## LOADING THE VEHICLE



### WARNING:

Locate heavy loads in the luggage compartment towards the front of the vehicle and secure them to stop them sliding. Loose items can be a hazard.

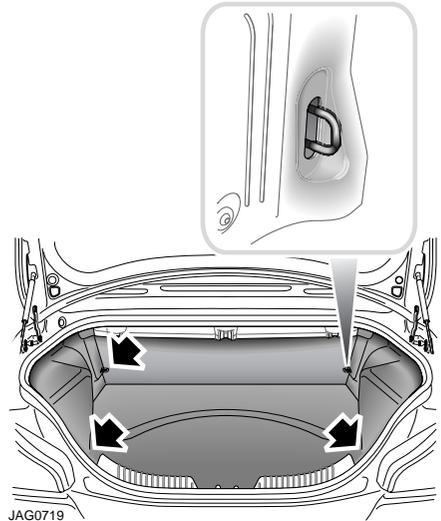


### WARNING:

Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid or tailgate open as exhaust fumes can be drawn into the passenger compartment.

## LUGGAGE TIE-DOWN LOOPS

Sedan



Four metal loops are positioned in the luggage compartment for attaching straps to secure loads and prevent them from sliding over the luggage floor.

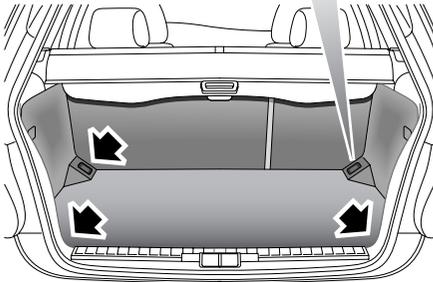
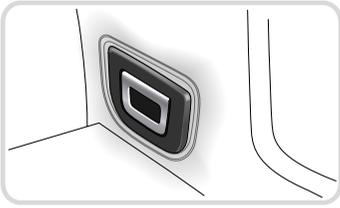
These loops are not to be used for securing passengers or animals nor as anchorages for child restraints.

A range of Jaguar storage accessories, including a luggage retaining net, is available from your Dealer.

It is advisable to distribute luggage weight evenly over the entire luggage floor area, particularly to prevent permanent damage to the seat trim when a seat has been folded down.

# Luggage Compartment

## Wagon



JAG0720

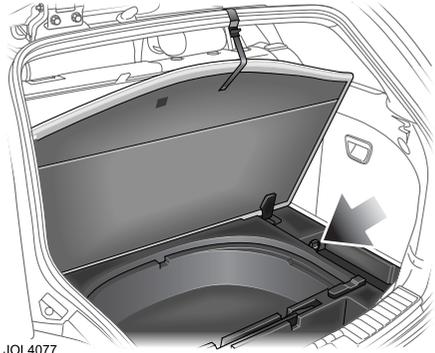
Four metal loops are positioned in the luggage compartment for attaching straps to secure loads and prevent them from sliding over the luggage floor.

The loops are hinged, and fold flat when not required. These loops are not to be used for securing passengers or animals nor as anchorages for child restraints.

A range of Jaguar storage accessories, including a luggage retaining net, is available.

It is advisable to distribute luggage weight evenly over the entire luggage floor area, particularly to prevent permanent damage to the seat trim when a seat has been folded down.

## UNDERFLOOR STORAGE (Wagon only)



JOL4077

There is an underfloor storage tray located below the floor panel. Lift the floor panel (there is a handle on the rear edge) to access the storage tray.

The floor panel is fitted with a retaining strap, which can be hooked over the top lip of the luggage compartment opening. This holds the floor panel out of the way when accessing the storage tray.

The hook on the end of the retaining strap is attached to the underside of the floor panel with velcro, when not in use.

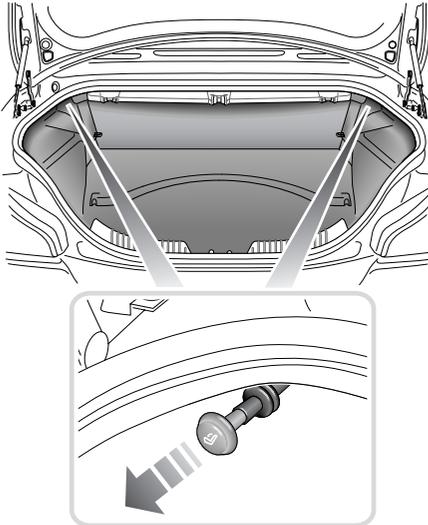
A 12-volt accessory socket is arrowed in the illustration above. See “Wagon accessory socket” on page 201.

# Luggage Compartment

## REAR SEAT BACK FOLD DOWN

To provide a longer luggage compartment area, the backs of the rear seat can be folded down in two parts to give a 70/30 width split.

**Sedan:** Release handles for each seat back are in the luggage compartment under the parcel shelf. Pull the handle to release the seat back.

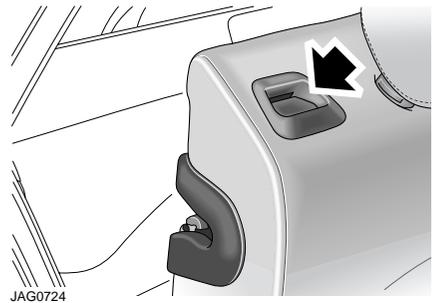


**Wagon:** Release catches are located on the top of each seat back. Press the catch to release the seat back.

 **WARNING:**

**There is an interlock between the centre seat belt and the seat latch: if the catches are not locked correctly, the centre seat belt will not operate.**

Once the seat back is released, fold it onto the seat cushion.



When folding the seat back, ensure that the armrest is stowed and that there is sufficient clearance between the seat back (including the head restraint) and the back of the front seat.

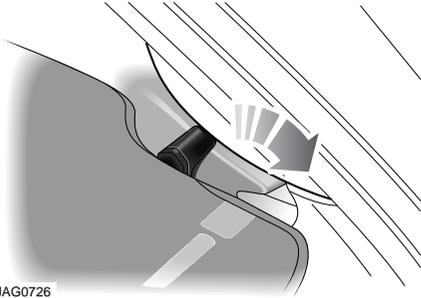
When returning the seat back to the upright position, ensure that the seat belts are routed correctly and are not trapped by the seat back. Press the seat back firmly and check that it is locked securely into place.

**Note:** There is a red indicator to the rear of each release catch, which is only visible when the seat is unlatched.

When returning the seat back to the upright position, ensure the catches lock correctly: when locked, the red indicator on each catch is obscured.

# Luggage Compartment

## WAGON LUGGAGE COVER



JAG0726

The luggage cover can be extended to hide the contents of the luggage compartment. The cover retracts into the housing when not required.

To extend the luggage cover, pull the handle towards you. There is a lug on either side of the luggage cover: slide the lugs into the catches on either side of the rear of the luggage compartment.

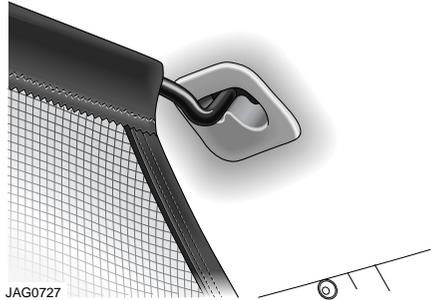
To retract the luggage cover, grip the handle and lift the lugs out of the catches. Gently allow the cover to retract into the housing.

## Luggage load net



### WARNING:

The luggage net is not designed to restrain objects in the event of a collision.



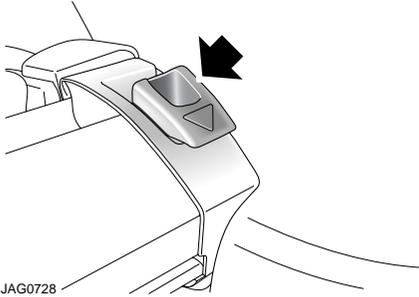
JAG0727

A luggage load net is fitted to some luggage cover housings. This can reduce the risk of luggage being thrown forward in the event of an accident, or under heavy braking. The load net can be retracted into the housing when not required.

When raising the net, it is easiest to reach it from the rear seat. Lift the net, and hook the lugs on either end into the catches in the roof. To retract the net, unhook the lugs and lower the net into the housing.

# Luggage Compartment

## Removing the luggage cover



**Caution: Care should be taken to avoid damaging the interior trim when removing the luggage cover.**

- Retract the luggage cover (and luggage load net, where fitted) into the housing.
- Release the two catches on either end of the luggage cover housing (see above).
- Lift the housing slightly, until it is clear of the trim on either side of the luggage compartment.
- Rotate one end of the luggage cover towards you, and carefully guide the cover out of the car. Keep an eye on both ends of the cover and avoid contact between the luggage cover and the luggage compartment trim.

Alternatively, the luggage cover can also be removed through the rear passenger doors:

- Retract the luggage cover (and luggage load net, where fitted) into the housing.
- Fold down both sections of the rear seat. See “REAR SEAT BACK FOLD DOWN” on page 87.
- Release the two catches on either end of the luggage cover housing.

- Lift the housing slightly, until it is clear of the trim on either side of the luggage compartment.
- Rotate one end of the luggage cover towards you, and carefully guide the cover out through the rear passenger door.

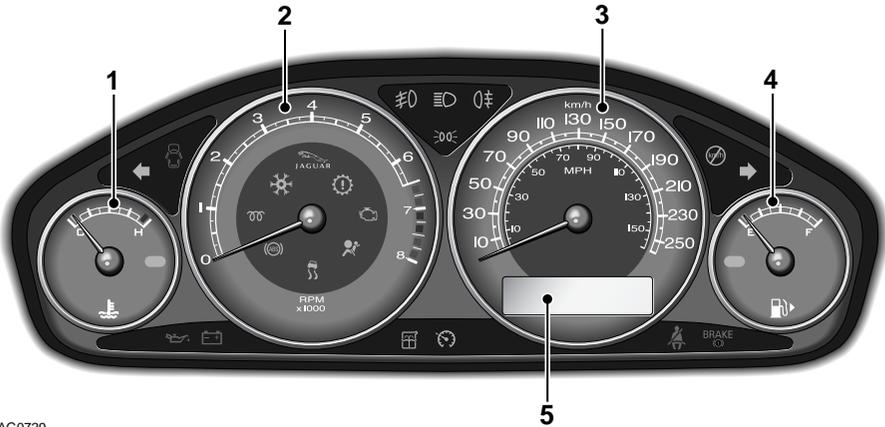
## Refitting the luggage cover

To refit the luggage cover, manoeuvre it into place without resting it on the side trim of the luggage compartment. Make sure the luggage cover is locked securely in place, with both of the catches properly engaged.

**Note:** *There is a green indicator on each of the luggage cover catches, which indicate that the catches are securely locked. Ensure the indicator on each catch is visible once the luggage cover has been refitted.*

# Instruments

## INSTRUMENT PANEL



JAG0729

None of the instruments will show correct indications until the ignition is switched ON (position II).

1. Temperature gauge.
2. Tachometer.
3. Speedometer.
4. Fuel gauge.
5. Odometer.

### SPEEDOMETER

Speed indication is in either:

**USA** - miles per hour, the outer figures, and kilometres per hour on the inner ring.

**Canada and Mexico** - kilometres per hour, the outer figures, and miles per hour on the inner ring.

### TACHOMETER

The tachometer indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute and is calibrated in increments of 250.

The scale extends to 8 000 rev/min.

**Caution: Do not allow the needle to enter the red sector.**

### FUEL LEVEL GAUGE

Indicates the amount of fuel in the tank. The amber warning light illuminates as a low fuel reminder.

The small arrow, shown beside the fuel pump symbol, identifies on which side of the vehicle the filler cap is located.

# Instruments

---

## ODOMETER

Records the total distance covered by the vehicle.

The odometer reading is displayed below the speedometer, along with the trip distance since it was last reset. To reset the trip distance, press and hold the mode button on the end of the left column lever switch for 3 to 4 seconds. The trip distance will roll-over at 999.9 miles (or 999.9 kilometres).

If the vehicle has a message centre then the odometer is displayed in the message centre unless a message has priority or a trip computer function has been selected. The trip distance will roll-over at 9999.9 miles (16,090 kilometres).

## ENGINE TEMPERATURE



### WARNING:

**The radiator cooling fans may continue to run after the ignition has been switched off but will automatically switch off when the engine has cooled sufficiently.**

Drive at moderate road and engine speeds until normal operating temperature is reached. This is indicated when the pointer is between the blue (cold) segment and the red (hot) segment.

The engine operating temperature will vary with changes in weather and engine load. The engine temperature may rise in some circumstances, such as:

- Idling for long periods in slow moving traffic.
- Driving up a long hill in hot weather.
- Driving slowly or stopping after driving at high speed.
- Towing a trailer or caravan.

Should the pointer move into the red segment **H** or the red light illuminate, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safely possible, turn off the engine and open the hood to allow the engine to cool.

# Warning Lights

## GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Warning lights are arranged within the instrument panel.

There are two warning lights, one red, the other amber, located above the message centre for primary and secondary status of the warnings displayed by the message centre.

RED warning lights are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or a Jaguar Dealer.

AMBER warning lights are for secondary warnings when the driver must take action and then report the fault to a Dealer at the earliest opportunity.

Other lights indicate system status, such as blue for high beam and green for direction indicators, when in operation.

A light check is initiated when the ignition is switched on and lasts for three seconds (except the air bag warning light, which will remain on for 6 seconds). If any warning light remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

When activated, some warning lights have associated messages displayed on the message centre.

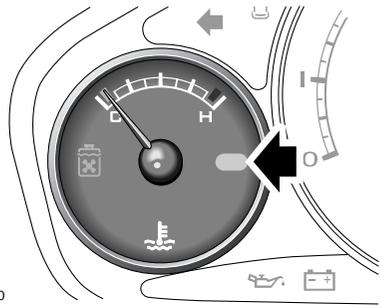
**Note:** *Not all lights are included in the light check, for example high beam headlights or direction indicators.*

## High Engine Temperature (Red)



### WARNING:

**Do not remove the coolant reservoir filler cap while the engine is hot. If it is essential, then protect your hands against escaping steam. SLOWLY turn the cap counterclockwise to allow the steam pressure to escape completely before removing the cap.**



JAG0730

**Caution: It is unsafe to run the engine in an overheated condition.**

The first indication of high engine temperature will be the needle entering the red zone of the coolant gauge and the illumination of the engine high temperature warning light.

The message centre will also display a message indicating the problem.

If driving, pull to the side of the road and stop the engine when it is safe to do so. Allow the engine to cool.

To assist cooling, high engine temperature automatically turns off the air conditioning. To maintain some cooling it is advisable to switch the air distribution to recirculation.

# Warning Lights

## Low Oil Pressure (Red)



This illuminates with the ignition switched on and should be extinguished when the engine is running.

If the warning light stays on when the engine is running, loss of oil pressure is indicated. Stop the engine immediately and investigate the cause.

**Caution: Do not restart the engine until the cause of loss of oil pressure has been identified and rectified.**

First check the engine oil level. See "CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL" on page 187.

## Seat Belt (Red)



Illuminates when the ignition is on and the driver's seat belt is not fastened. If the warning

light stays on with the seat belt fastened, report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer. It is safe to drive the vehicle with the light on, provided that the seat belt is properly fastened.

Ensure that all occupants' seat belts are fastened before driving.

## Charge Indicator (Red)



Illuminates when the ignition is on and should be extinguished when the engine is running.

If the light stays on when the engine is running it indicates that there is a generator fault.

Turn off all electrical accessories, radio, climate control, rear windshield heater etc. Try to use the minimum electrical load possible and avoid using power windows, electric sunroof etc.

Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer.

## Powertrain Malfunction (Red)



(Petrol only) Illuminates when there is an engine malfunction or transmission system malfunction.

If a message centre is fitted the light will not illuminate but instead a message will be displayed.

## Brake (Red)



**WARNING:**

**DO NOT drive the vehicle until the brake fault is rectified. Consult a Jaguar Dealer immediately.**



This light illuminates when:

- The ignition is on and the parkbrake is applied.
- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a fault with the electronic brake system (with the ABS light illuminated).

If the light is on with the parkbrake NOT applied, low brake fluid or a fault with the electronic brake system is indicated. In this case, there may be a loss of braking assistance in one, or both, brake circuits. If the light is on with the ABS light also on then the electronic brake system may not function correctly, which can impair stability when the brakes are applied.

# Warning Lights

---

## Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) (Amber)



If a fault has been detected in the anti-lock brake system (ABS) this light will illuminate.

The brake system will continue to function normally, but without ABS braking.

Should the light come on or stay on after the bulb check cycle, stop the vehicle at the first opportunity, turn the engine off and then restart.

If the ABS light comes on again, the vehicle should be driven to a Jaguar Dealer at the earliest opportunity.

## Engine Malfunction (Amber)



This light illuminates when there is an engine malfunction.

Specialised diagnostic equipment is required to repair such faults. Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer.

The vehicle may go to limp home mode, with the possibility of reduced engine performance. Drive the vehicle with caution.

## Side (Parking) Lights (Green)



Illuminates when the side (parking) lights are switched on.

## Air Bag (Amber)



If the air bag system develops a fault, the warning light will flash and then come ON and remain

on until the fault has been diagnosed and cleared.

Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer immediately.

It is safe to drive the vehicle; however, in an accident the air bags may not operate.

## High Beam (Blue)



Illuminates when the high beam headlights are switched on or flashed on.

## Front Fog Lights (Green)



Illuminates when the front fog lights are switched on.

## Rear Fog Lights (Amber)



Illuminates when the rear fog lights are switched on.

## Direction Indicators (Green)



The appropriate indicator tell-tale will flash when the column

switch is moved up or down to signal a right or left-hand turn. If a direction indicator fails, the tell-tale will flash at twice normal rate when that indicator is selected. Fit a new bulb immediately.

**Note:** *If a bulb has failed, the audible ticking will sound at twice the normal rate.*

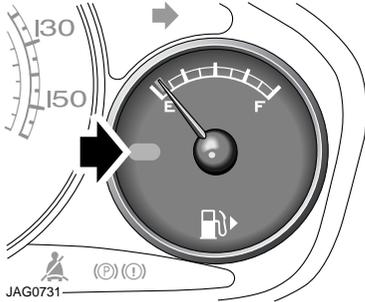
## Hazard warning lights

When the hazard warning is selected, both direction indicator tell-tales flash simultaneously.

# Warning Lights

---

## Low Fuel Reminder (Amber)



An amber lozenge in the fuel gauge illuminates when the remaining fuel has fallen to approximately 2.1 US gallons (8 litres) including the reserve.

## Low Outside Temperature (Amber)



### **WARNING:**

**Even if the light is not illuminated, there is no guarantee that at low temperatures the road is free from ice.**



(Where fitted). Illuminates when frost or ice is likely to form on road surfaces.

The light will continue to be illuminated until the outside temperature rises to a safer level.

If required, the low outside temperature warning light can be disabled by a Jaguar Dealer.

# Audible Warnings

---

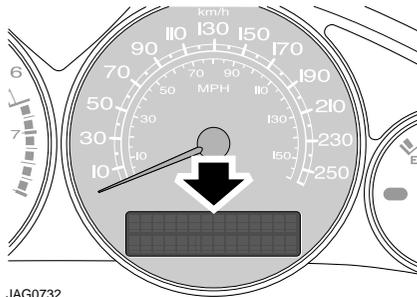
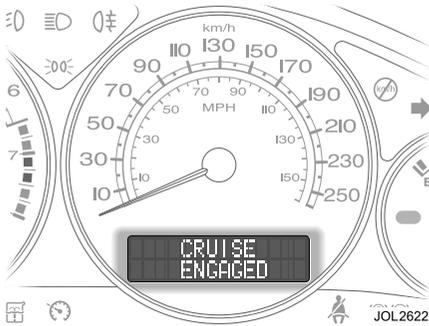
## WARNING SOUNDS

Various sounds are produced for warning and notification purposes as follows:

Hazard or Condition	Remedy/chime or tone
External lights remain on when the driver's door is opened.	A chime will sound until the lights are switched off or driver's door is closed. <b>Note:</b> <i>The chime will not sound if the switch is in the Auto position.</i>
Hazard warning indicators on.	A ticking will sound until the hazard indicators are switched off.
Left or right direction indicators on.	If the switch has not turned itself off, switch the turn indicator off when the manoeuvre is completed. A ticking will sound until the indicators are switched off.
Entry delay warning.	A ticking warning will sound. Disarm the alarm system within 15 seconds by placing a key in the ignition switch and turning to position <b>I</b> or press the key transmitter unlock button.
Air bag system failure.	A tone sequence is repeated five times. Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer as soon as possible.
Automatic gear selector lever not in Park (P).	When the ignition key is turned from position <b>II</b> to position <b>I</b> a chime will sound for 10 seconds or until the lever is moved to Park (P).
Key in ignition warning.	A ticking will sound until either the key is removed, the driver's door is closed or the ignition switched on.

# Message Centre

## MESSAGE CENTRE LOCATION (Where fitted)



JAG0732

Driver information, messages and data are displayed on the message centre display panel situated within the instrument panel.

For the message centre to operate the ignition must be switched on (position II).

The message centre displays:

- The total distance covered by the vehicle.
- Trip computer information.
- Warning messages if system faults are detected.
- Status messages to indicate changes in state of certain vehicle functions.

## MESSAGES



### WARNING:

**If a red warning light is displayed, stop the vehicle as soon as possible but only when it is safe to do so.**

The primary function of the message centre is to inform the driver of the following:

- Warning messages.
- Temporary alert messages.
- Information messages.

Most messages, when displayed, have an associated warning light, red or amber, above the display which will come on to indicate the message priority.

If more than one message is active, each is displayed in turn for two seconds in order of priority.

**Note:** Messages take priority over the odometer reading or trip computer data and, if active, will be displayed when the ignition is switched on.

### Message centre illumination

The message centre is lit at all times when the ignition is on.

All information displayed will be brightly lit if the exterior light switch is off.

If the exterior light switch is on the display brightness can be varied using the dimmer switch.

**Note:** Warning lights and warning messages are always brightly lit and are not affected by the dimmer switch.

# Message Centre

## Message descriptions

The tables on the following pages list all messages and warning lights and explain their meaning.

Message	Warning Light	Priority Indicator	Meaning
LOW BRAKE FLUID LEVEL	Brake	Red	Displayed when the brake fluid level is low. Complete loss of braking may occur.
HIGH ENGINE TEMPERATURE	Engine Overtemp	Red	Displayed when engine temperature becomes excessive. Pull off the road when safe to do so and allow the engine to cool.
RESTRICTED PERFORMANCE	None	Red	This will be displayed when the vehicle has possible loss of power or driveability. Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer.
ENGINE SYSTEM FAULT	Malfunction Indicator light	Amber or Red	Displayed when the engine has defaulted to limp-home mode. Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer at the earliest opportunity.
GEARBOX FAULT	None	Amber	It is likely that the driver will experience a degradation of gearbox operation.
DSC SYSTEM FAULT	Stability Control	Amber	Displayed when a fault occurs in the stability control system.
DSC ON or DSC OFF	Stability Control	Amber	Displayed when the stability control system is switched on or off. The warning light will flash when the stability control system is switched on and operating. When the system is switched off, the warning light in the instrument panel will be illuminated until the system is switched back on.

# Message Centre

<b>Message</b>	<b>Warning Light</b>	<b>Priority Indicator</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
DRIVER'S or PASSENGER'S FRONT OR REAR DOOR OPEN	Door Ajar Warning	Red	Check that all doors are closed before driving.
TRUNK OPEN	Door Ajar Warning	Red	Check that the luggage compartment lid (or Wagon tailgate and tailgate glass) is closed before driving.
LOW WASHER FLUID LEVEL	Low washer fluid level	Amber	Replenish the washer fluid at the earliest opportunity.
CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE	None	Amber	Displayed when a fault has occurred in the cruise control system.
CRUISE ENGAGED or CRUISE CANCELLED	None	None	Displayed when cruise control is engaged or cancelled.
SECURITY FAILED	None	Red	Displayed when a fault is detected in the security immobiliser system. The alarm security light in the centre console will flash. It is possible that the engine will not start. Report the fault to the nearest Jaguar Dealer.

# Trip Computer

---

## TRIP COMPUTER FUNCTIONS

The computer memory stores data for a journey or series of journeys until it is reset to zero.

The displayed information is for guidance only, as it can be affected by traffic, road and weather conditions.

Two independent memories are available (A and B) to allow two separate journeys to be recorded concurrently, for example, work usage and evening/weekend usage.

Trip distance, average fuel economy and average speed will be prefixed A or B depending on the current memory selected.

Press the TRIP button on the end of the left column lever switch repeatedly to display the data in the following order:

- Odometer.
- Trip distance.
- Distance to empty.
- Average fuel economy.
- Average speed.
- Messages.

### Odometer

The odometer shows the total vehicle distance travelled since the vehicle was new.

When the ignition is switched on (position **II**) the display shows the odometer and trip distance readings.

The odometer reading is displayed in either miles or kilometres, depending on the units selected with the trip computer.

### Trip distance (A/B)

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9999.9 miles (16 090 kilometres). The computer will automatically reset to zero if this distance is exceeded.

### Distance to empty

Predicted distance, miles or kilometres, that the vehicle should travel on the remaining fuel, assuming average fuel economy and fuel consumption stay constant.

### Average fuel consumption (A/B)

The average fuel consumption, litres per 100 kilometres or miles per gallon, based on the accumulated distance travelled and the accumulated fuel used.

### Average speed (A/B)

The average speed since the last press of the reset button.

# Trip Computer

## TRIP COMPUTER SWITCHPACK



JAG0734

### ML/km

Pressing the ML/km switch alternately displays data in metric or imperial units.

### A/B

Selects either A or B trip memory. Select the required data using the column lever TRIP button and then pressing A/B will show the A or B information for that data.

### RESET

RESET resets the selected trip to zero.

Warning and Information messages have priority over trip data and, if active, will be displayed when the ignition is at position II.

**Note:** *If warning messages are hidden, the warning/fault still exists and requires investigation.*

### Resetting the trip computer

At the start of the journey (or series of journeys) to be recorded, reset the computer memory to zero as follows:

1. Press the TRIP button on the end of the left column lever switch to select a trip function. The computer will display either TRIP A: or TRIP B: data.
2. Press the A/B switch to select the trip (A or B) to be reset.
3. Press the RESET switch and hold for 3 seconds.

The display will read:

RESETTING

TRIP A (or B).

Then it will reset and display:

A: 0 (or B: 0)

or the new value.

**Note:** *All trip functions, for A or B depending on which was selected, will be reset.*

### Display language

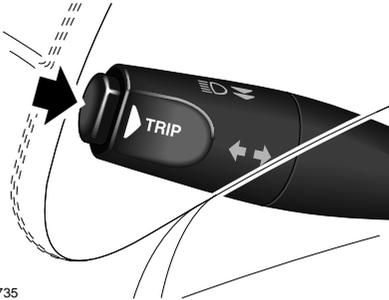
To change the display language, switch the ignition on while pressing the ML/km switch. The trip computer will display the current language.

Press the ML/km switch repeatedly to cycle through the available languages. Once the correct language is selected, press the A/B switch. The new language will be selected after a delay of three seconds.

**Note:** *If you wish to exit the language selection function without changing the display language, you can either press the RESET switch, wait for 10 seconds or switch the ignition off.*

# Trip Computer

## Trip



JAG0735

Press the TRIP button to cycle through: TRIP - ODOMETER - MESSAGES - CLOCK (where available).

## Clock

If your vehicle is fitted with the Jaguar navigation system, the clock can be displayed in the message centre. Press the TRIP button on the end of the left column lever switch to cycle through the trip functions and display the clock.

**Note:** The time is adjusted via the touch-screen. See "Clock" on page 80.

## CLEARING MESSAGES

Messages can be hidden by pressing RESET on the trip computer switchpack. One press will hide one message. Once all messages have been hidden, the display will show trip data, a further press will display the odometer reading.

If RESET is pressed again, all active messages will be re-displayed. Repeatedly pressing the RESET button will cycle through the trip, odometer and message modes.

If a fault occurs when in trip computer or odometer mode, the relevant message will be displayed immediately.

If a trip computer function is selected by pressing the TRIP button while messages are displayed, the trip data will be displayed for 10 seconds, then the message will reappear.

Hidden messages reappear after an ignition off/on cycle, if the fault remains.

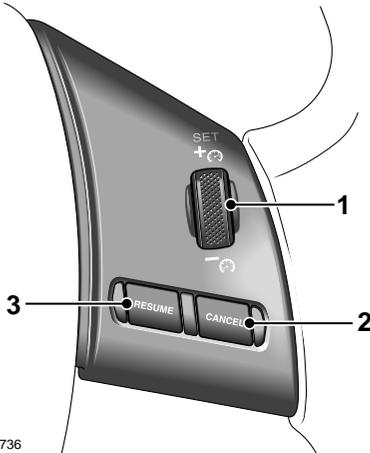
# Cruise (Speed) Control

## CRUISE CONTROL SWITCHES



### WARNING:

Only use cruise control when conditions are favourable, for example, straight, dry, open roads with light traffic.



JAG0736

The cruise (speed) control system (where fitted) can be used by the driver to maintain a selected vehicle speed above 18 mph (28 km/h) without the driver having to use the accelerator.

Controls on the steering wheel allow the driver manual control of the system. Brake and clutch operations also influence the cruise control system.

1. SET/Speed adjustment wheel is used to engage cruise control initially. It is also used to increase/decrease the set speed.
2. CANCEL cancels cruise control but retains the set speed in memory.
3. RESUME engages cruise control after it has been cancelled.

## Setting Vehicle Speed

When you are travelling at the speed you require, which must be above 18 mph (28 km/h), rotate the speed adjustment wheel towards + and then release it. Cruise control will engage and maintain the set speed and you can remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.



The instrument panel light will illuminate to show that the system is on. Vehicles with a message centre will show the message CRUISE ENGAGED.

**Note:** Cruise control will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is pressed or when the vehicle speed falls below 18 mph (28 km/h). Vehicles with a message centre will show the message CRUISE CANCELLED.

# Cruise (Speed) Control

---

## Changing the Set Speed

To increase or decrease the set speed, rotate the speed adjustment wheel until the desired speed is obtained.

The speed adjustment wheel can be used in two ways:

- If the wheel is repeatedly rotated and released (i.e. flicked towards + or -), the set speed will increase/decrease in increments of 1 mph or 2 km/h.
- If the wheel is rotated towards + or - and held in position, the set speed will continuously increase/decrease.

## Resuming the Set Speed

If the vehicle is accelerated above the set speed, then the set speed will be resumed when the accelerator pedal is released.

If CANCEL is pressed, or the brake or clutch pedal is pressed, the cruise control will disengage but the set speed memory will be retained. Press RESUME and the vehicle will return to the set speed.

**Note:** *Cruise control will not resume at speeds below 18 mph (28 km/h).*

**Caution: RESUME should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.**

**Cruise control will switch off and clear the memory when:**

- The ignition is switched to position 0.
- A fault occurs. The cruise control system will switch off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared.

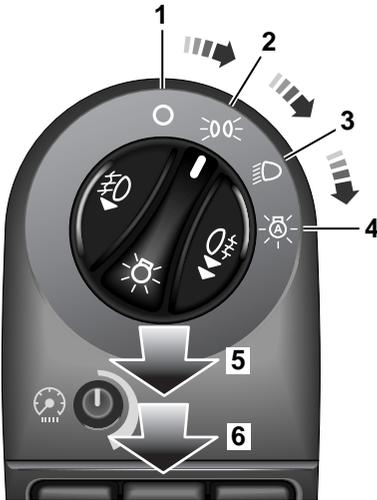
## Cruise Control Automatic Switch Off

Cruise control will switch off but the set speed will remain in the memory when:

- The CANCEL button is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The parkbrake is applied.
- Speed falls below 18 mph (28 km/h).
- Neutral, Park or Reverse gear positions are selected.
- Dynamic stability control is operating.
- The difference between the actual and set speed is too great.
- When the vehicle reaches a maximum speed of 120 mph (192 km/h).
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period.

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING SWITCH



JAG0737

1. OFF.
2. Side (parking) lights.
3. Headlights.
4. Auto lights.
5. Front fog lights.
6. Rear fog lights.

The exterior lights are controlled by a rotary light switch mounted on the fascia and by the left-hand column switch.

The rotary switch has six positions. These are:

**OFF 1** - All exterior lights off (except vehicles provided with daylight running lights).

**Sidelights 2** - Switches on front sidelights, tail, number plate and any other marker lights required by local legislation. When the external lights are on the instruments will also be lit.

**Headlights 3** - With the ignition in position **II**, this position switches on dipped headlights in addition to the lights switched on in position **2**.

The left-hand column lever switch has two pull positions. Pulling and releasing the switch to the first position causes the high beam to flash. The high beam can be flashed with the ignition in position **II** and will remain on for as long as the switch is held.

The second position is to switch high beam headlights on. With the ignition in position **II**, first select dipped beam lights **3**, and then pull the column light switch, past the first position, fully towards the steering wheel.

The blue warning light on the instrument panel and high beam headlights will come on.

To turn high beam off, pull the column switch again to the high beam position.

**Note:** If dipped beam is switched off, with high beam still activated both dipped and high beam will be extinguished. Both dipped and high beam will illuminate if dipped is turned on again. The ignition must be in position **II** for the flash to operate.

### Headlight convenience

The high beam lights are turned on for 30 seconds when the headlight convenience button on the key transmitter is pressed.

**Note:** The key must not be in the ignition switch for this feature to operate.

The high beam lights can be turned off before the 30 second delay by pressing the headlight convenience button on the key transmitter or by turning the ignition to position **II**.

# Exterior Lighting

---

**Auto lights 4** - A light sensor control (where fitted), mounted on the front of the interior mirror fixing cover, monitors exterior light levels and automatically switches the sidelights and dipped headlights on or off.

The ignition switch must be in position **II** for automatic light operation.

When light fades to the non-adjustable, preset level, the sidelights and headlights will switch on automatically.

As light increases to the preset level, the sidelights and headlights switch off automatically.

Do not cover the sensor and keep the windshield clean. Obstructing the light in this area may lead to unwanted operation of the sidelights and headlights.

## **Front fog lights 5**

With the switch in sidelight or dip position, pull the switch to its first position to turn on the front fog lights. Pushing the switch in or turning it to off will turn off the front fog lights.

**Note:** *The front fog lights should only be used when visibility is severely restricted by fog.*

Front fog lights cannot be used with high beam headlights. If high beam headlights are switched on when the front fog lights are on, the front fog lights will be switched off.

The front fog lights will not turn on if they are selected when high beam headlights are on.

## **Rear fog lights 6**

With the switch in any position except off, pull the switch to its second position to turn on the rear fog lights. This will also turn on the front fog lights unless high beam is selected. Pushing the switch in or turning it to off will turn off the rear fog lights.

## **Daylight running lights**

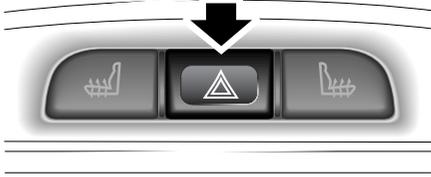
In certain countries it is a legal requirement for the lights to be on during the hours of daylight.

With the rotary light switch in the off position **1**, dipped headlights, sidelights, tail, number plate lights and, where fitted, side marker lights will switch on automatically with the following conditions:

- The ignition is turned to position **II**.
- The vehicle gear selector out of park.
- The parkbrake not applied (released).

# Exterior Lighting

## HAZARD WARNING



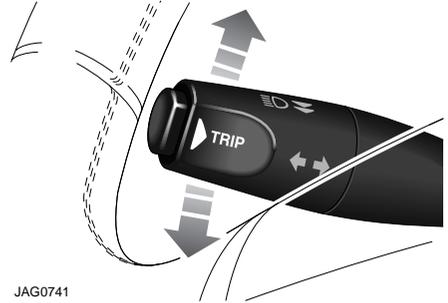
JAG0740

The switch is in the centre console and operates with the ignition on or off. Use only in an emergency to warn traffic of a vehicle breakdown or approaching danger.

**To operate:** Press the switch; the direction indicators, the instrument panel green indicators and audible warning will operate in unison.

**To cancel:** Press the switch again.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



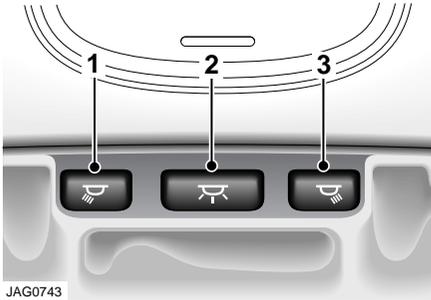
JAG0741

The direction indicators operate when the ignition is in position II. To indicate for a right or left turn, move the column left lever switch up or down respectively. The switch will cancel when the turn is completed.

An audible ticking and a flashing green arrow on the instrument panel indicates that the selected direction indicator is on. Should a direction indicator bulb fail, the corresponding side green warning light will flash at twice the normal rate. The audible ticking will sound at twice the normal rate.

# Interior Lighting

## READING/MAP LIGHTING



JAG0743

Interior lighting comprises, front and rear overhead courtesy lights, two front reading/map lights and a rear roof light. Vanity mirrors, glove compartment, footwell and luggage compartment lights are provided.

Press the centre switch **2** in the front roof console to turn the courtesy light on. A second press turns the light off.

The reading/map lights are turned on and off by individual switches **1** and **3**.

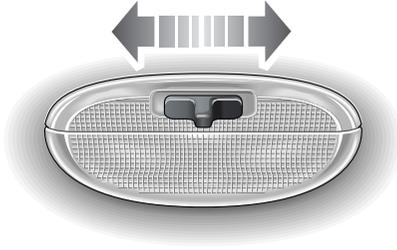
### Illuminated Entry/Exit

The courtesy lights will gradually illuminate and remain on for 25 seconds if:

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- The ignition switch is turned off (from position **II** to **0** or **I**).

If the courtesy lights are on they will fade off 25 seconds after the last door is closed, or when the vehicle is locked.

## REAR ROOF LIGHT



JAG0744

The rear roof light switch has three positions:

- In the left position the light will be switched on.
- In the centre position the light will come on or go off when a door is opened.
- In the right position the light will be switched off.

## BATTERY SAVER

If the interior lights are switched on using the centre switch in the overhead console and the ignition switch is turned to positions **0** or **I**, the lights will automatically turn off after 30 minutes.

If the interior lights are switched on by opening a door and the ignition switch is in positions **0** or **I**, the lights will automatically turn off after 10 minutes.

If the glove compartment or vanity lights are switched on and the ignition switch is turned to positions **0** or **I** or the key is removed, the lights will automatically turn off after 30 minutes.

# Interior Lighting

---

## DIMMER SWITCH



JAG0745

The instruments, door switch packs, in-car entertainment panel and the climate control panel will be lit when the ignition switch is in position **II**.

Push and release the knob to extend it for ease of operation.

Rotate the knob to adjust the illumination to the required level.

Push the knob again to place it in the stowed position.

# Parking Assist

## PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM

(Where fitted)



### WARNING:

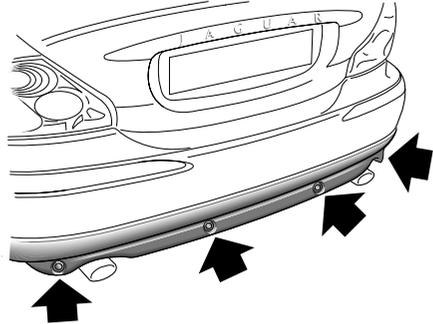
It remains the driver's responsibility to be vigilant when reversing. Small children or animals may not be detected by the system.

**Caution:** It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the car's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, thin obstructions or painted surfaces which could possibly cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the system. Always be vigilant when reversing.

Rear parking assist is switched on with the ignition. However, it only becomes active once reverse gear is selected.

### Caution:

- If, for example, you are driving within a confined space such as a home garage, the outer sensors will detect the side walls and after 3 seconds will switch the tone off. However, as movement continues, the inner sensors will eventually detect the rear wall and will start the tone again.
- The rear sensors are not active when the gear selector is in neutral, therefore care should be taken if moving the vehicle as the tone will not sound.
- Do not clean the sensors with abrasive or sharp objects.



JAG0746

### Note:

- For reliable operation, the sensors in the rear bumper should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.
- When using a high pressure spray the sensors should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 200 mm (8 inches). Do not clean the sensors with abrasive materials.

### Towing

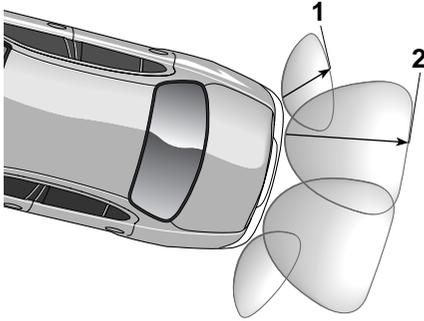
Where approved Jaguar tow-bar electrics are fitted, the reverse parking assist is automatically switched off if a caravan or trailer is attached to the vehicle.

### Rear-fitted accessories

Particular care must be taken when reversing with rear-fitted accessories e.g. tow-bar or bicycle carrier, as the rear park assist will only indicate the distance from the bumper to the obstacle.

# Parking Assist

## Rear parking assist



JAG0747

When reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on, rear parking assist becomes active. It provides an audible warning when reversing the vehicle if obstacles are detected within range of the rear of the vehicle, as shown in the illustration above.

**1** is approximately 300 mm (12 inches).

**2** is approximately 1.5 m (59 inches).

If an obstacle is detected at the rear of the vehicle, a series of beeps will be heard from the rear speaker, which increases in rate as the vehicle nears the obstacle.

The beep becomes a continuous tone when an obstacle is detected at or within approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from the rear of the vehicle.

### **Note:**

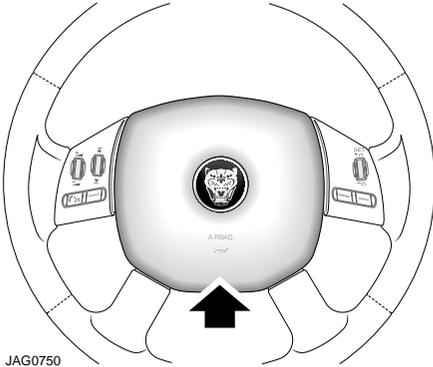
- *If the system has a fault when engaging reverse gear or turning on the ignition, then a single three second tone will be heard (only once per ignition cycle) and, if fitted, the switch light will blink. The system is automatically disabled when a fault is detected.*

- *Do not overload the vehicle. If the vehicle is overloaded, rear parking assist may sound spurious tones if it detects the road surface.*

# Horn

---

## HORN LOCATION



JAG0750

The dual tone horn is operated by pressing the centre pad on the steering wheel.

The horn also operates as a warning horn if the vehicle alarm system is activated.

# Sunroof

## SUNROOF OPERATION



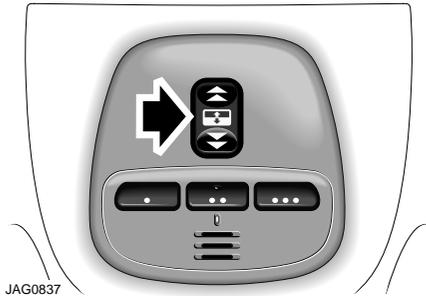
### WARNING:

Before opening or closing the sunroof check that all occupants are clear.



### WARNING:

When leaving the vehicle take the ignition key to prevent misuse of the sunroof switch by remaining occupants, especially children.



JAG0837

The sunroof switch is located in the overhead console. The ignition switch must be in position II for the sunroof to operate.

### To open the sunroof

- Push the rear of the switch gently upwards to the first position and hold until the sunroof is fully open. The sunroof can be stopped at any open position by releasing the switch.
- To fully open the sunroof with one-touch operation, briefly push the rear of the switch fully upwards to the second position and then release. To stop the sunroof opening, briefly press the switch upwards, forwards or rearwards.

### To close the sunroof

- Push the front of the switch upwards to the first position and hold until the sunroof is closed. It can be stopped at any position by releasing the switch.
- To close the sunroof with one-touch operation, briefly push the front of the switch upwards to the second position and then release. To stop the sunroof closing, press the switch upwards, forwards or rearwards.

### To tilt the sunroof

To tilt the sunroof open, push the front of the switch upwards and hold until the required position is reached, or until the tilt is fully open, and then release the switch. To tilt open with one-touch operation, briefly push the switch upwards to the second position.

To close the tilted sunroof, push and hold the rear of the switch until the sunroof is closed. Briefly push the rear of the switch upwards to the second position to tilt closed with one-touch operation.

## SUNSHADE OPERATION

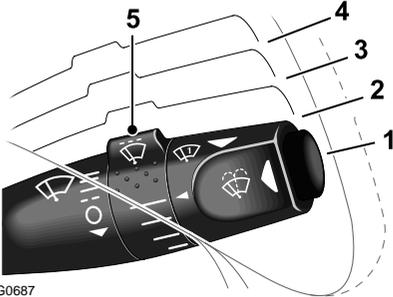
The sunshade can be manually opened and closed. When the sunroof is fully open the sunshade is also fully open. It cannot be manually closed from this position.

**Note:** When the sunroof is fully open the sunshade is also fully open and, because the recessed handle is hidden, it cannot be manually closed from this position. The sunroof will need to be fully closed to gain access to the recessed handle.

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

The windshield wipers and windshield wash functions are controlled by the right-hand column lever switch and only operate with the ignition in position II.



JAG0687

The lever functions are as follows:

1. Windshield wipers off and parked.
2. Intermittent wipe.
3. Slow wiper operation.
4. High speed wiper operation.
5. Intermittent wipe delay.

### Intermittent wipe

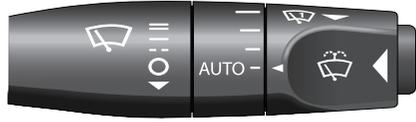
When intermittent wipe is selected the delay between wipes can be varied. Turn the collar **5** to vary the delay from 1 second to 22 seconds.

### Flick wipe

**Sedan** - Pull the column switch towards the steering column for a single wipe. Holding the column switch in this position will operate the wiper continuously at slow speed until released.

**Wagon** - Push the column switch downwards from the off position **1**. Holding the column switch in this position will operate the wiper continuously at slow speed until released.

## Rain sensitive wiper control



JAG0807

When AUTO (turn the rotary collar **5** to AUTO) and intermittent wipe **2** are selected, the wipers will automatically operate when rain falls on to the windshield, or when moisture is present.

For the wipers to operate, the ignition switch must be in position II.

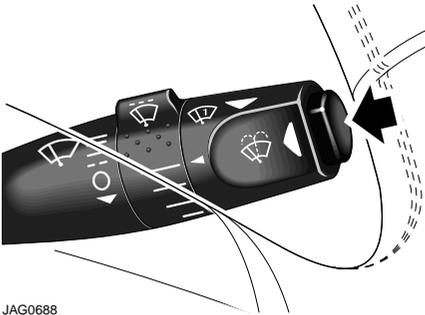
**Note:** When starting a journey with a wet windshield, the rain sensing wipers will not operate immediately the ignition is switched on. Therefore, a flick wipe should be used to clear the windshield of any moisture.

### Caution:

- Ensure that AUTO is not selected when entering a car wash or damage to the wiper blades/arms can occur.
- During frosty conditions ensure that AUTO is not selected before operating the ignition switch as damage to the wiper blades can occur when the windshield is frozen.

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WASH/WIPE



JAG0688

Push the button on the end of the switch to obtain the wash/wipe programme.

If the wipers are set to off or intermittent, the washers will operate at slow speed during the washing action when the button is pressed. When the button is released, the wipers will complete three further wipes.

After the wash cycle has been completed the wipers will pause and then complete a drip wipe to clean any remaining drips of moisture from the windshield. If rain sensitive wipers are fitted and selected then the wipers will operate until no moisture is detected. Drip wipe can be turned on or off by a Dealer/Dealer, if required.

## HEADLIGHT POWERWASH

**Note:** The headlight powerwash units are mounted between the front headlights.

The headlight powerwash feature will operate if the ignition is in position II and sidelights are switched on. It will not operate if the washer fluid level is low.

When the windshield wash/wipe button is pressed, the headlight powerwash directs a short burst at the headlights. If the wash/wipe button is held, the windshield wash cycle will continue for up to 20 seconds.

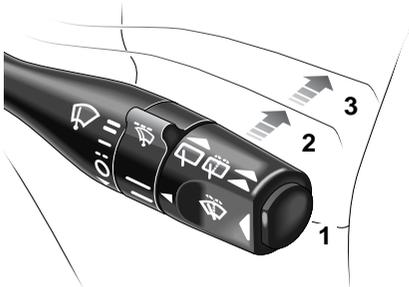
The headlight powerwash will operate the first time the wash/wipe button is pressed and thereafter every sixth succeeding wash/wipe operation. If the headlights or ignition are switched off and on again, headlight powerwash will operate on the next press of the wash/wipe button.

**Note:** If the washer fluid level is low in the reservoir the windshield wipers will not operate when windshield wash is selected even though there may be washer fluid remaining in the reservoir and sprayed onto the windshield. This is to prevent damage to the blades, scratching of the glass, or smearing dirt. Flick wipe can be selected to clear the sprayed fluid.

# Wipers and Washers

---

## WAGON REAR WASH/WIPE



JAG0689

Wagon models are fitted with a rear windshield wash/wipe. This is operated by the right-hand column lever and only operates with the ignition in position II.

The lever functions are as follows:

1. Rear wiper off and parked.
2. Intermittent wipe.
3. Continuous wash and wipe.

Push the lever forward and hold it in position to select position 3. Release the lever, and it will return to position 2.

If the windshield wipers are switched on and reverse gear is selected, the rear wiper will wipe intermittently.

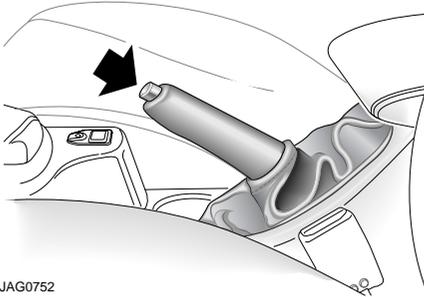
If the rear wiper is set to intermittent when reverse gear is selected, the rear wiper will wipe continuously.

**Caution: In cold conditions, when frost may be present on the rear windshield, it is advisable to switch off the windshield wipers before selecting reverse gear. The automatic operation of the rear wiper may cause damage to the blade if the windshield is heavily frosted.**

# Parkbrake

---

## TO APPLY THE PARKBRAKE



JAG0752

Always apply the parkbrake fully before leaving the vehicle.

- Press the footbrake pedal firmly.
- While pressing the brake pedal, pull the parkbrake lever up smartly to its fullest extent.
- Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel towards the kerb.

**Note:** Vehicles with automatic transmission should always be left with the selector lever in position **P**.

## TO RELEASE THE PARKBRAKE

To release the parkbrake, press the brake pedal firmly, pull the lever up slightly, depress the release button and push the lever down.

# Interior Features

---

# Interior Features

## SLIDING ARMREST

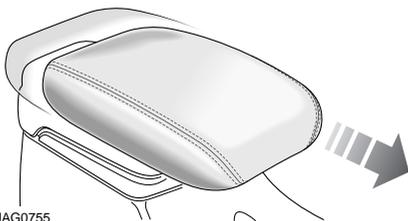
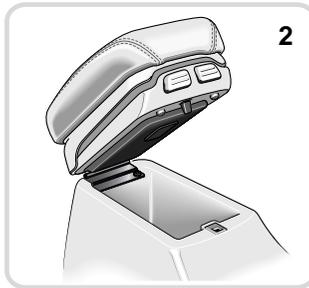
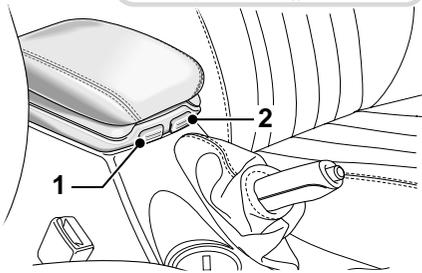


The sliding armrest is hinged at the rear and has two release buttons located on the front of the armrest.

Press the right-hand button **1** and lift the top of the armrest to gain access to the top storage compartment.

Press the left-hand button **2** and lift the complete armrest to gain access to the centre console cubby box compartment. The cubby box contains a storage rack for audio CDs or cassettes.

Pull the top of the armrest forwards or push rearwards to slide the armrest to a comfortable position.



JAG0755

# Interior Features

## CUPHOLDERS



### WARNING:

The cup and bottle holders should only be used for soft containers. Containers which are hard (cans, metal, ceramic, hard plastic etc.) can cause serious injury if the vehicle is involved in an accident, sudden manoeuvre or braking.



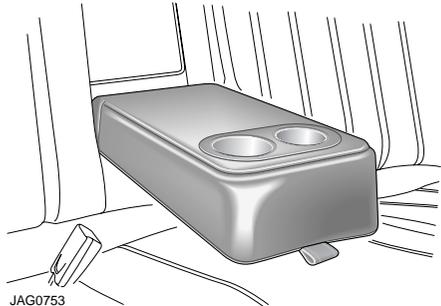
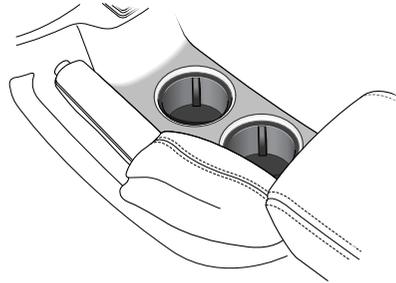
### WARNING:

Do not carry open drinks containers. Hot liquids can cause serious injury when spilled and may damage the vehicle.



### WARNING:

Do not drink, or use the drinks holders when driving. Doing so would break concentration, which may result in loss of control.



JAG0753

The centre console and rear armrest each contain two cupholders.

# Interior Features

## GLOVE COMPARTMENT

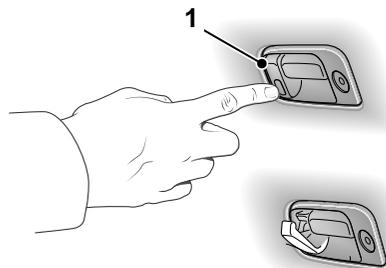
A glove compartment is located below the passenger's air bag.

To open the glove compartment, lift the handle and allow the lid to drop down. The compartment will be illuminated when open, provided the sidelights are switched on.

If the compartment is left open the light will extinguish approximately 30 minutes after the ignition has been set to position **0**.

The glove compartment can be locked using an ignition key.

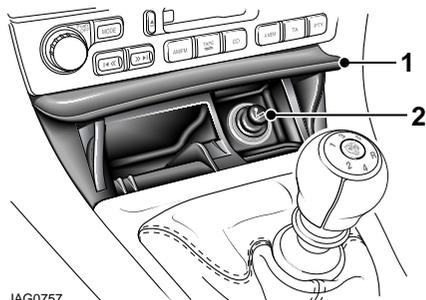
### Light-weight luggage hook



JAG0754

A hook for holding light-weight items such as a handbag, purse or small shopping bag is fitted beside the glove compartment lid release catch. Press the lower part of the hook **1** to lower the hook. Fold the hook back into the lid after use.

## CIGAR LIGHTER AND ASHTRAY



JAG0757

To gain access to the cigar lighter and ashtray, press the lid **1** at the bottom edge, close to the chrome indicator.

To operate the cigar lighter **2** the ignition must be on, press the lighter down and wait until the element has heated, it will then pop-up.

**Note:** Never hold the lighter knob down. Do not attempt to remove particles from the heating element as it is self-cleaning.

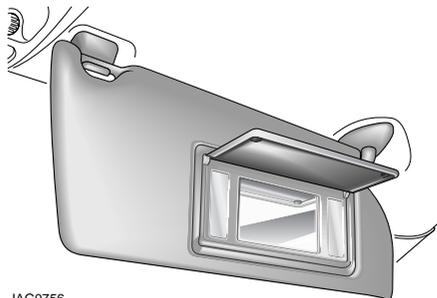
To empty the ashtray, lift it out vertically and remove. After emptying, push the ashtray into the opening until it snaps back into place.

The cigar lighter is replaced by a 12 volt accessory socket on certain models. The accessory socket can be used to power 12 volt appliances having a maximum current rating of 10 amperes. However, if the engine is not running, this will accelerate battery discharging.

**Note:** When connecting appliances to the accessory socket, use only connectors suitable for use with SAE standard sockets.

# Interior Features

## SUN VISORS AND VANITY MIRRORS

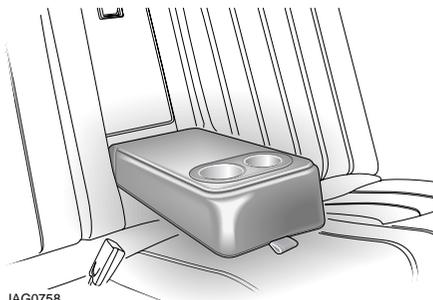


JAG0756

Adjustable sun visors can be swung downwards or unclipped and swung sideways to reduce sun glare.

The sun visors are fitted with illuminated vanity mirrors, behind a hinged flap. The light comes on when the flap is lifted.

## REAR CENTRE ARMREST



JAG0758

Pull the loop on the rear centre armrest to lower. If not required, raise the armrest to its upright position and push firmly into place. Ensure that the armrest is raised when lowering the seat back to increase the luggage compartment area. See “CUPHOLDERS” on page 120.



### **WARNING:**

**Never carry hot liquids in the cupholder whilst the vehicle is moving. If the contents spill, occupants could be scalded. Use only soft cups and cool liquids.**

# Engine Starting

---

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

When the vehicle is stationary the automatic gear selector may be left in **D**, **2**, **3** or **4**, unless the vehicle is to be parked. When stopping for traffic lights, junctions etc., either select **P** or apply the parkbrake and select **N**.

## BEFORE STARTING

Before starting the engine, new owners/drivers should familiarize themselves with the layout and operation of the controls and instruments.



### WARNING:

**Before attempting to start the engine, check the parkbrake is on and the gear selector lever is in position P or N.**

## STARTING THE ENGINE

The engine cannot be started until the automatic transmission gear selector is in **N** or **P**.

Insert the key into the ignition switch and turn clockwise to position **II** to switch on the ignition.

When the key is turned to position **III** the starter motor will turn the engine until:

- The key is released and automatically returns to position **II**.
- The ignition switch is turned to **0** or **I**.
- The gear selector is moved out of **P** or **N**.
- The engine starts.

Do not use the starter continuously for longer than six seconds. Continued use of the starter will discharge the battery and may damage the starter mechanism. When the engine starts, release the key. Wait until the engine stops turning before re-using the starter.

The red charge warning light in the instrument panel should go out when the engine is running.

### If the engine fails to start

If an ignition key is placed in the ignition switch and turned to position **II** and the alarm security light is flashing, it is possible that the engine will not start. In any event, please contact a Jaguar Dealer to investigate the cause of the light flashing.

It is possible that the fuel system inertia switch may have tripped and needs to be reset. See "Inertia Switch" on page 158.

If the engine persistently fails to start and flooding is suspected, depress the accelerator pedal fully, hold it in this position and turn the key to position **III** for six seconds. Release the key, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal and then attempt to restart the engine.

**Note:** *The engine cannot start whilst the pedal is fully depressed, it must be released to enable the engine to start.*

If the engine still fails to start, switch the ignition off and contact a Jaguar Dealer.

# Engine Starting

---

## **Stopping the engine and locking the steering**

Turn the key from position **II** to the lock position **0**. This turns off the ignition and stops the engine. The steering will be locked when the key is removed from the switch.

Leaving the key in position I or II will discharge the battery.

# Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### J-Gate

The J-gate gear selector lever is designed to accommodate two different driving techniques as follows:

- Automatic selection - the right-hand side of the selector gate.
- Manual selection - the left-hand side of the selector gate to individually select 4th, 3rd, or 2nd gear.

### Gearshift Interlock

A brake pedal/gearshift interlock system is incorporated in the automatic gear selector mechanism.

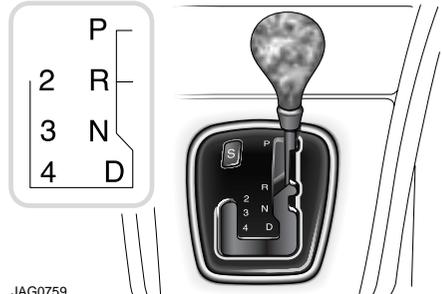
To move the gear selector from Park:

1. Turn the ignition key to position **II** or start the engine.
2. Press the brake pedal.

## Gear Selector Positions



**WARNING:**  
The parkbrake or brake pedal must be applied before selecting forward or reverse drive from a stationary position.



JAG0759

**P** = Park - Use when parking. In this position the transmission is locked. Do not select if the vehicle is moving.

**N** = Neutral - Disconnects the driveline from the engine. Use the parkbrake when stopping temporarily.

**R** = Reverse - Do not select if the vehicle is moving forward.

The reversing lights come on automatically when reverse gear is selected and the ignition switch is in position **II**.

**D** = Drive - All five gears are changed automatically as required by the throttle position and road speed.

**2, 3, 4** = Second, third, fourth - If selected, the transmission operates automatically but will not engage gears higher than the one selected.

# Transmission

---

**Note:** After selecting forward or reverse drive ranges from Neutral or Park, wait briefly for the transmission to engage before accelerating.

## Drive to fourth

When driving in gear position **D** with fifth gear engaged, the gear selector can be shifted sideways across the gate to **4**. Provided that the vehicle's speed is not too great, the transmission will shift down to fourth. Fifth will be inhibited until the gear selector is moved back to **D**.

## Hill climbing and engine braking

When driving on roads with long downhill gradients, selecting **3** or **2** (depending on road/traffic conditions) will give engine braking.

When the gear selector is moved from **D**, **4** or **3** down to **2**, downshift to second gear will only take place at road speeds below 40 mph (64 km/h).

## Shift inhibit

Reverse is inhibited when the vehicle is moving forward at speeds above 5 mph (8 km/h).

**Note:** Reverse inhibit will not function in limp-home mode.

## Kickdown

Kickdown is operated when the accelerator pedal is pressed fully down, beyond the normal operating spring pressure, to provide maximum engine performance. Kickdown is used in circumstances where rapid acceleration is required, such as when overtaking.

Kickdown causes the transmission to change down to the lowest gear possible to achieve maximum acceleration. The gear engaged depends on the road speed at the time of kickdown.

As well as shifting down, the gearshift points are extended to give greater performance. This mode is in effect for as long as the pedal is fully pressed down.

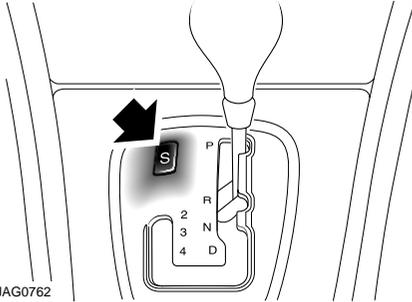
## Limp-home mode

In the unlikely event of an electrical or mechanical failure, transmission operation will be impaired. The vehicle gear selector ranges **P**, **R**, **N**, **D** can still be used to enable the vehicle to be driven to a safe area.

The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance will be reduced and must take this into account when driving. In this event consult a Jaguar Dealer **immediately**.

# Transmission

## Sports Mode



The switch marked **S** on the J-gate surround enables the driver to select either normal **N** or sport **S** modes.

When Sports mode is selected the automatic transmission will operate normally, but the gearshift points are extended to make full use of the engine's power reserves.

To select Sport, press the switch. A red light within the switch is illuminated to indicate that sport mode has been selected.

To cancel Sport, press the switch again.

**Note:** Both sides of the J-gate can be used irrespective of the transmission mode, e.g. with **S** selected the transmission can be operated in full automatic or by manual selection.

In addition to the switched transmission modes (**N** and **S**) the transmission control module will select shift patterns to suit specific conditions.

**Cruise Control** - When cruise control is operating at set speed the transmission selects a shift pattern to suit cruise control operation.

**Dynamic stability control** - When DSC/traction control is switched on and the system is activated, the transmission selects a shift pattern to suit traction control conditions. See "DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)" on page 131.

**Gradients** - When the vehicle is being driven on roads with uphill gradients, the transmission adapts the shift pattern to make better use of engine power and aid engine cooling.

**Note:** Under the conditions described above, the relevant transmission mode will override the **N** or **S** modes selected by the driver. When such conditions no longer exist, e.g. Cruise Control switched off, the transmission will revert to the shift pattern previously selected by the driver, i.e. **N** or **S**.

# Braking System

---

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)



### WARNING:

**It remains the driver's responsibility to drive safely according to prevailing conditions.**



### WARNING:

**The fact that a vehicle is fitted with ABS must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his/her safety or that of other road users.**



### WARNING:

**The addition of ABS cannot overcome the consequences of trying to stop in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the risk of aquaplaning.**



### WARNING:

**The driver should always take road conditions into account. A slippery road surface always requires more braking distance for a given speed, even with ABS. A possible increase in stopping distance compared to locked wheels may occur during ABS operation on slushy snow, gravel, sand, or some heavily corrugated or ridged warning sections of road surfaces.**

This system helps to prevent the road wheels from locking and skidding during emergency braking, assisting the driver to maintain full steering and directional stability.

The factor controlling ultimate stopping distance and cornering ability is tire/road adhesion.

ABS optimises tire/road adhesion under maximum braking conditions though it cannot provide increased cornering ability. There is no need for special braking techniques, such as pumping the brakes, to achieve optimum braking distances and control on poor or slippery road surfaces. Tires must be in good condition to achieve maximum adhesion.

During normal braking the ABS will not be activated. However, if the braking force applied begins to exceed tire/road adhesion the ABS will automatically activate, preventing the road wheels from locking.

In these circumstances a pulsating effect will be felt from the brake pedal indicating that the system is functioning. The pulsating effect is due to small fluctuations in pressure supplied to the brakes by the system to maintain full tire/road adhesion.

Under severe braking on some road surfaces tire noise may be apparent even though the wheels will at no time become locked.

### ABS monitoring

The ABS control module monitors the ABS electrical system from ignition switch on to ignition switch off. Any malfunction will be indicated by the anti-lock warning light coming on.

Should a fault develop in the ABS system, the brake system will still operate conventionally and with the same standard of performance as vehicles not equipped with ABS.

# Braking System

---

**Caution: Consult a Jaguar Dealer immediately if the warning light comes on while driving, a system failure is indicated.**

## **Advice on ABS braking techniques**

For optimum ABS performance these instructions on braking techniques during ABS operation should be followed:

- Do not release brake pressure when the pulsating effect is felt. Maintain a constant pressure until the manoeuvre is completed.
- To familiarise yourself with the feel of the brake pedal during ABS braking, practise an emergency stop procedure, always making sure it is safe to do so. With the seat belts fitted to all occupants, drive the vehicle at 20 mph (32 km/h) and brake sharply.
- ABS enables the driver to steer around obstacles during emergency braking. However, the consequences of turning sharply at high speed cannot be overcome by the ABS.
- Do not attempt to pump the brakes to avoid skidding as this can interfere with the ABS operation. The ABS will not allow the wheels to skid under normal road conditions.
- The ABS will tend to keep the vehicle straight during braking. Because braking distances may increase under certain road conditions, it is necessary to plan and make turning manoeuvres as early as possible.

## **EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST**

The emergency brake assist (EBA) system is only available on vehicles fitted with dynamic stability control (DSC). The Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system (where fitted) measures the rate at which the brake pressure increases. If the system detects an emergency braking situation, EBA automatically initiates the full braking effect. This can reduce stopping distances in critical situations, which can help an inexperienced driver to stop in the same distance as an experienced driver.



### **WARNING:**

**The EBA system is an additional safety system: it is not intended to relieve the driver of his responsibility for exercising due care and attention when driving.**

# Traction Control

## Traction Control Operation



JOL2657

The system will intervene to prevent wheel spin, by automatically reducing the power output from the engine and applying braking to individual wheels.

This improves acceleration, particularly on surfaces with uneven friction, for example, one wheel on ice the other on tarmac.

Traction control is always switched ON when the engine is started.

If the system is operating, the warning light in the instrument cluster will flash.

The traction control (and dynamic stability control, when fitted) system can be switched OFF by pressing the switch on the gear selector surround. The warning light in the instrument cluster will remain on and a message will be shown to indicate that the system has been switched OFF. If the switch is pressed again the system will switch ON.

**Note:** If cruise control is engaged it will automatically disengage if traction control activates.

If a message centre is fitted, a system malfunction is indicated by the message:

### **TRACTION CONTROL FAULT**

Warning light: **Amber.**

For all vehicles, the instrument cluster warning light will be lit.

It is safe to drive the vehicle but the system may not activate under wheel spin or slide conditions. Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer as soon as possible.



### **WARNING:**

- **The fact that the vehicle is fitted with Traction Control must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his/her safety or that of other road users. In all cases it remains the driver's responsibility to drive safely according to the prevailing conditions.**
- **It is recommended that, if using snow chains, traction control should be switched OFF.**

When traction control is switched ON and the system is activated, the transmission selects a shift pattern to suit traction control conditions.

# Stability Control

## DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)



JOL2657

Dynamic stability control (DSC) is operational whenever the engine is running, unless it has been switched off. If the system is operating, the warning light in the instrument panel will flash.

The DSC system controls the anti-lock braking system (ABS), traction control and yaw control of the vehicle.

Yaw control determines the vehicle's direction relative to the driver's inputs (sideslip and under/oversteer). It applies braking pressure to individual wheels if excessive variation is detected. This ensures that the vehicle follows the driver's intended direction of travel.

The system will intervene to prevent wheel spin, by automatically reducing the power output from the engine and applying braking to individual wheels.

This improves acceleration, particularly on surfaces with uneven friction, for example, one wheel on ice the other on tarmac.

The dynamic stability control system can be switched off by pressing the switch on the centre console. The warning light in the instrument panel will remain on and, if fitted, a message will be shown to indicate that the system has been switched off. If the switch is pressed again the system will switch on.

**Note:** *If cruise control is engaged it will automatically disengage if stability control activates.*

If a message centre is fitted, a system malfunction is indicated by the message:

### **DSC SYSTEM FAULT**

Warning light: **Amber.**

For all vehicles, the instrument panel warning light will be lit.

It is safe to drive the vehicle but the system may not activate under wheel spin or slide conditions. Report the fault to a Jaguar Dealer as soon as possible.

### **WARNING:**

- **The fact that the vehicle is fitted with DSC must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his/her safety or that of other road users. In all cases it remains the driver's responsibility to drive safely according to the prevailing conditions.**
- **It is recommended that when using snow chains, DSC should be switched off.**

When DSC is switched on and the system is activated, the transmission selects a shift pattern to suit traction control conditions.

# Driving Information

---

## BEFORE DEPARTING



### WARNING:

**Ensure the parkbrake is on and the gear selector is in position P or N before attempting to start the engine.**

Before driving off, check the gauges and warning lights and messages. Take special note of any warning light that is on.

Seat belts are provided for your safety and it is unwise, and in certain countries illegal, to commence any journey, however short, without wearing them.

## WARMING UP

Do not operate the engine at high speed when first started but allow time for the engine to warm up and the oil to circulate.

## ENGINE BRAKING

When driving on mountain roads with long downhill gradients it is advisable to select a low gear.

## PARKING THE VEHICLE

When leaving the vehicle, remember the following:

- Whenever the vehicle is parked apply the parkbrake and move the gear selector to Park **P**.
- Do not leave children or pets in the vehicle unattended.
- Do not leave luggage or valuables on view. Always take your valuables with you or lock them in the luggage compartment.
- Remove the ignition key and spare keys, even when the vehicle is in your garage.

- When the vehicle is unoccupied, close all windows and lock all doors securely.
- Park the vehicle where it can be seen. At night, park in a well-lit area.
- When leaving the vehicle unattended, for maximum security ensure that the doors are double-locked.
- Ensure that the keys are removed from the vehicle before locking the doors, and that all doors, the luggage compartment and the hood are closed.

## HEADLIGHTS IN DAYLIGHT

When visibility is poor the headlights with dipped beam setting should be switched on so that the vehicle may be seen more easily by other road users. The instrument illumination dimmer control adjusts the brightness of the panel lighting.

## WINTER DRIVING

### Freeing a frozen door lock

**Caution: Do not apply a proprietary lock de-icer through the keyhole.**

Should the lock become frozen, warm the end of the key before use.

### Windshield wiper blades

Before driving away, clear any ice from the windshield and check that the wiper blades are free. Switching on the heated windshield will accelerate this process.

### Frost precautions

The correct concentration of coolant must be maintained at all times when replenishing or refilling the cooling system.

# Driving Information

---

## TOURING

### Foreign travel

Before planning foreign travel, check with a motoring organisation to ensure that your vehicle will comply with legal requirements of the countries you intend to visit.

It is advisable to carry vital spare parts to ensure serviceability in a remote area.

International motoring organisations are helpful for all aspects of long distance touring advice.

In some countries it is a legal requirement to carry spare vehicle bulbs.

### First aid kit

A first aid kit is compulsory equipment in certain countries. Your Jaguar Dealer can supply a first aid kit.

### Fire extinguishers (Mexico only)

It is compulsory to carry a fire extinguisher. Your Jaguar Dealer can supply and fit one. See "Fire Extinguisher" on page 182.

### Fuel in containers

Some countries forbid the carrying of fuel in containers, as do most ferry and hovercraft operators.

### Cellular radio telephones

Ask your motoring organisation about the use of cellular radio telephones before travelling abroad, as some countries exercise controls on the importation and use of such equipment.

### Roof-rack

For Sedan models, only the Jaguar approved roof-rack should be used.

For Wagon models, an approved load carrier must be attached to the roof rails, before attempting to carry items on the roof. Do not attempt to attach loads directly to the roof rails.

The maximum load, including the weight of the roof rack or load carrier, must not exceed the load rating indicated on the roof-rack bars and **must** be deducted from the vehicle maximum luggage load. Do not exceed the roof load capacity. See "Load Weights" on page 224.

When carrying items on the roof, make sure the load is distributed evenly. It is advisable to place heavier items as low in the vehicle as possible. Make sure items placed on the roof do not obstruct the sunroof or prevent the Wagon tailgate from opening.

Always ensure that items are securely fastened to the roof-rack or load carrier, to avoid the load from shifting.

Loads on the roof-rack may affect vehicle handling, especially in crosswinds or when cornering. Where possible, avoid heavy braking and sudden acceleration.

### Jaguar warning triangle (Mexico only)

A warning triangle to give traffic advanced notice of a disabled vehicle is compulsory in many countries. A triangle, designed to international standards, is standard equipment in certain countries.

Hazard warning lights must be used with the warning triangle.

The warning triangle with its stand legs folded flat, is mounted on the inside of the luggage compartment lid (Sedan) or under the luggage compartment floor (Wagon).

# Driving Information

---

In an emergency, remove the triangle and unfold its stand legs. Place the triangle in the road in accordance with local traffic regulations to give oncoming traffic warning of an immobilised vehicle.

## TOWING A TRAILER

Your Jaguar Dealer, and the main motoring and caravanning organisations can advise you on towing, towing weight capacities and about regulations that apply in other countries.

The following are important points of safety, stability and comfort upon which further advice should be sought:

- Maximum braked towing weight is permissible, provided long periods of uphill driving on gradients over 8% are not undertaken.
- In high altitude mountainous regions, the thinner atmosphere can reduce engine performance. Above 3 280 feet (1 000 metres) the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every 3 280 feet (1 000 metres) in altitude.
- Check the kerb weight of the vehicle. See “Weights” on page 223.
- When towing, the nose weight of the caravan or trailer and the tow-bar assembly must be deducted from the permissible maximum load. See “Load Weights” on page 224.
- When towing at the maximum permissible rear axle load keep within legal towing speeds but in any case do not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph). Increase tire pressures to 250 kPa (39 psi).

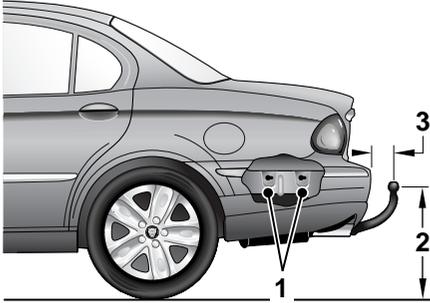
- Do not exceed the recommended maximum tow-ball nose weight. See “Load Weights” on page 224. Having a lower nose weight or exceeding the maximum nose weight limit may impair the vehicle’s handling.
- It is essential that only a Jaguar tow-bar and Jaguar electrical tow-bar kit are supplied and fitted by a Jaguar Dealer.

### Caution:

- 1. Using electrical kits not specifically designed for this Jaguar will damage the electrical system of the vehicle.**
  - 2. When not in use, it is recommended that the removable tow-ball is either securely stowed in the luggage compartment or, preferably, not in the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle.**
- Avoid heavy braking. As the overrun brake on the caravan or trailer is not connected to the ABS, heavy caravan or trailer braking could critically affect the stability of the outfit as a whole.
  - Ensure that the towing vehicle’s engine, transmission, suspension, brakes and tires are fully efficient and regularly serviced. Similarly check the wheels, tires, brakes and wheel bearings of the caravan or trailer.
  - Adjust the headlight level to avoid dazzling other road users.

# Driving Information

## TOW-BAR FIXING POINTS - SEDAN



JAG0764

The rear longitudinal members are factory pre-marked **1** for drilling the tow-bar mountings. There are three mounting points on each side.

There is a depression in the lower back panel which marks the point at which a hole is to be drilled for the wiring harness.

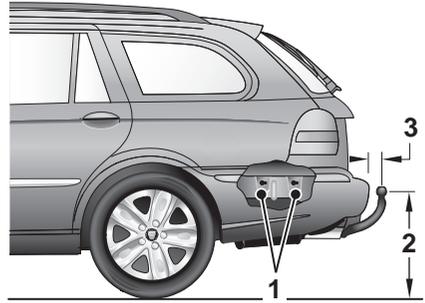
Tow-ball centre height from the ground at Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW):

**2** = 385 mm (15.2 inches).

Tow-ball centre distance from bumper cover:

**3** = 76 mm (3 inches).

## TOW-BAR FIXING POINTS - WAGON



JAG0765

The rear longitudinal members are factory pre-marked **1** for drilling the tow-bar mountings. There are three mounting points on each side.

There is a depression in the lower back panel which marks the point at which a hole is to be drilled for the wiring harness.

Tow-ball centre height from the ground at Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW):

**2** = 350 mm (13.75 inches).

Tow-ball centre distance from bumper cover:

**3** = 95 mm (3.75 inches).

# Fuel and Refuelling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Before refuelling, switch off the ignition and remove the key.

**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in the vehicle; vehicles have been stolen from garage service/filling stations whilst the driver is absent from the vehicle. It is recommended that the vehicle is locked, if left unattended.

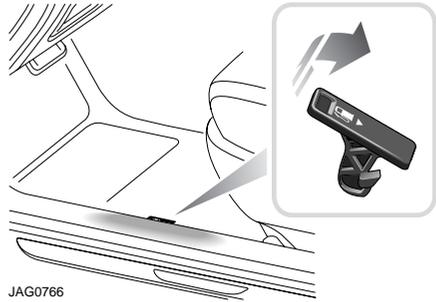
**Caution:** Do not put additives of any kind (fuel or oil) in the fuel tank. Additives could reduce engine life or affect exhaust emissions.



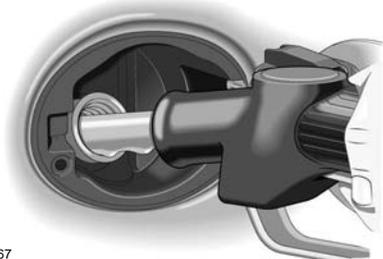
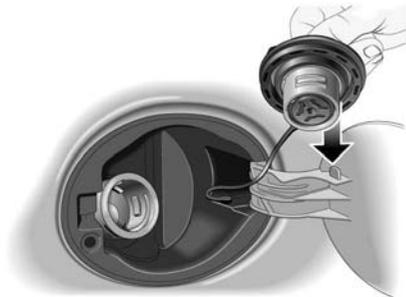
### WARNING:

- Fuel vapour is highly flammable and in confined spaces is explosive and toxic. In the event of inadvertent spillage, and before refuelling, always switch off the engine. Do not use exposed flame or light. Do not smoke. Do not inhale fumes.
- Do not fill the tank so that fuel is visible in the fuel filler intake tube. This could cause spillage and danger from exposed fuel.

## FUEL TANK FILLING



JAG0766



JAG0767

The fuel filler flap release is located on the floor, outboard of the driver's seat. The filler flap is on the right-hand side of the vehicle. Pull the lever to release the flap.

To remove the filler cap, turn it counterclockwise approximately  $\frac{1}{2}$  a turn, until a slight resistance is met. Continue to turn the cap a further  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn and remove it from the filler neck.

# Fuel and Refuelling

---

The cap, which is held by a retaining strap, can be stowed over the hook on the flap to allow easy access to fill the tank.

When filling, the dispenser nozzle must be inserted into the filler neck sufficiently to open the trap door for fuel to flow into the fuel tank. Fill the tank until the filler nozzle automatically shuts off. Filling beyond this point could result in fuel spillage.

After refuelling, refit the filler cap in the filler neck and twist the cap clockwise until it clicks three times. Close the flap, which automatically locks shut.

The continuous use of high quality fuel makes the need for additional additives unnecessary. This will help to protect the engine components against corrosion, carbon deposit formation and prevent the fuel injection system from clogging.

If in doubt your local Jaguar Dealer will advise on which fuel must be used in your vehicle.

## Emission control components

Owing to the legislative requirements or options available in some countries, a Jaguar Dealer should be consulted where any doubt exists as to the precise emission control system specification of this vehicle.

## FUEL CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel and never intentionally drive the car when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refuelling your vehicle after the fuel gauge reads empty, you may not be able to add the fuel quantity shown below as there will be a small reserve remaining in the tank.

Total tank capacity	16.2 US Gallons (61.5 litres)
Indicated refill capacity - E to F on fuel gauge	14.9 US Gallons (56.5 litres)
Unindicated (reserve) capacity	1.3 US Gallons (5.0 litres)

# Fuel and Refuelling

---

## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

### Unleaded fuel

All vehicles are fitted with a catalytic system and can only use unleaded fuel.

Unleaded fuel must be used for the emission control system to operate properly. Its use will also reduce spark plug fouling, exhaust system corrosion and engine oil deterioration.

Use only Premium unleaded gasoline with a minimum anti-knock index (AKI) of 91.

Using unleaded fuel with a lower AKI than recommended can cause persistent, heavy spark knock (a metallic rapping noise). If severe, this can lead to engine damage.

If a heavy spark knock is detected even when using fuel of the recommended octane rating, or if you hear steady spark knock while holding a steady speed on level roads consult a Jaguar Dealer.

Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, for which Jaguar Cars Limited is not responsible. However, occasional light spark knock for a short time while accelerating or driving up hill, may occur.

### Fuels containing alcohol

**Caution: Take care not to spill fuel during refuelling. Fuel containing alcohol can cause paint damage, which may not be covered under the warranty.**

Some fuel suppliers sell fuel containing alcohol without advertising its presence. Where uncertainty exists check with the service station operator.

**Note:** *Some difficulty in starting may be encountered when using alcohol blended fuel.*

### Ethanol

**Caution: This vehicle is not suitable for use with fuels containing more than 10% Ethanol. Do not use E85 fuels (85% Ethanol content). Equipment necessary for the use of fuels containing more than 10% Ethanol is not fitted to this vehicle. If E85 fuels are used, serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.**

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol (grain alcohol) may be used. Ensure the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers will not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

### Methanol

Some fuels contain methanol (methyl or wood alcohol). If you use fuels containing methanol the fuels must also contain co-solvents and corrosion inhibitors for methanol. Also, do not use fuels that contain more than three per cent methanol even if they contain co-solvents and corrosion inhibitors. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels is not the responsibility of Jaguar Cars Limited, and may not be covered under the warranty.

# Fuel and Refuelling

---

## **Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE)**

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as MTBE can be used provided the ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel does not exceed 15 per cent.

MTBE is an ether based compound, derived from petroleum, which has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

## **Reformulated gasoline**

Several petroleum companies have announced the availability of reformulated fuels. These fuels are specially designed to further reduce vehicle emissions.

Jaguar fully supports all efforts to protect and maintain ambient air quality and encourages the use of reformulated gasoline where available.

# Fuel and Refuelling

---

## CATALYTIC CONVERTERS

A few precautions on the use of vehicles fitted with catalytic converters are necessary. These are:

- In order to maintain the efficiency of the emission control system it is essential that the correct fuel is used. Never refuel with leaded fuel: this will seriously damage the catalytic converters.
- Heavy impact on the converter casings must be avoided.
- The engine settings must not be altered; they have been established to ensure that the vehicle will comply with stringent exhaust emission regulations. Incorrect engine settings could cause unusually high catalytic converter temperatures and thus result in damage to the converter and vehicle. If adjustment to the settings is considered necessary, this should be performed by a Jaguar Dealer.
- A correctly tuned engine optimises exhaust emissions, performance and fuel economy and it is recommended that the vehicle is regularly maintained.
- Do not continue to operate the vehicle if any engine malfunction is evident; malfunctions should be rectified immediately. For instance, misfire, loss of engine performance, excessive oil consumption or engine run-on may lead to unusually high catalytic converter temperatures and may result in damage to the converters and vehicle.
- The use of catalytic converters increases exhaust system temperatures, therefore, do not operate or park the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves may come into contact with the exhaust system.
- Do not run a petrol engine with either a spark plug lead disconnected or a spark plug removed. Do not use any device that requires an insert into a spark plug hole in order to generate air pressure e.g. tire pump, paint spray attachment etc., as this could also result in catalytic converter damage.
- The vehicle is designed for normal road use. Below are examples of abuse which could damage the catalytic converters and vehicle. These may lead to a dangerous condition due to excessively high catalytic converter temperatures:
  - Competition or off-road use.
  - Excessive engine speed.
  - Overloading the vehicle.
  - Switching off the engine whilst in gear.

# Climate Control

---

## INTRODUCTION

This vehicle is fitted with one of the following climate control systems:

- Automatic climate control system with an LCD (liquid crystal display) screen. See '*Automatic Climate Control*', page 144
- Automatic climate control system with touch-screen (shared with the navigation and audio systems). See '*Touch-screen Climate Control*', page 149.

Each system has a unique control panel located in the centre console above the radio and audio controls.

General information applicable to both systems is given below.

## RECOMMENDED OPERATION

### Use of air conditioning

The manual and automatic climate control systems are fitted with air conditioning to provide cooling and dehumidified air.

The dry airflow is also effective in preventing misting of the windows. It is recommended that air conditioning is used in all climatic conditions throughout the year, even when warm airflow is required.

Close all windows and the sunroof when the air conditioning is on to ensure satisfactory operation.

**Note:** *Selecting air recirculation will improve the performance of the air conditioning in very hot conditions.*

### Use of air recirculation

The air conditioner/heater system is supplied with fresh air via an intake flap.

The flap may be closed to allow the air inside the vehicle to be recirculated. This helps to prevent unpleasant odours from being drawn into the vehicle.

On both systems, air recirculation may be manually selected either for an automatically timed period or to remain on continuously (latched recirculation).

When latched recirculation is selected, the air conditioning will switch on automatically to reduce condensation.

**Note:** *When air recirculation is selected, the sound of the airflow will change. This is normal.*

### Automatic climate control systems

Air conditioning, recirculation and other functions are fully controlled in AUTO mode to provide optimum comfort under most driving conditions.

It is recommended that AUTO is selected as the normal operating mode on these systems.



### **WARNING:**

**To prevent humidity build up inside the vehicle and possible screen misting, avoid driving with the air conditioning system off or in manual air recirculation for prolonged periods.**

# Climate Control

---

## GENERAL POINTS

To ensure the satisfactory operation of the climate control system, note the following points:

- Ensure that the external grille at the base of the windshield, which provides fresh air for the climate control system, is kept clear of leaves, snow or obstructions.
- Air ducts under the front seats supply the rear passenger footwells (refer to illustration). See “AIR DISTRIBUTION” on page 143. Objects or material placed under the seats may block or obstruct the open ducts.
- The external air intake to the air conditioner/heater system is fitted with a filter. Ensure that the filter is changed at the specified service intervals to maintain efficient operation.
- If the air conditioning system is not used frequently, it should be run briefly at least once each week, with a cold setting, to prevent the seals from drying out with subsequent refrigerant leaks.
- Moisture removed from the air by the air conditioning unit is discharged onto the road underneath the vehicle. After stopping, puddles of water may form underneath the vehicle: this is normal.

## PANEL ILLUMINATION

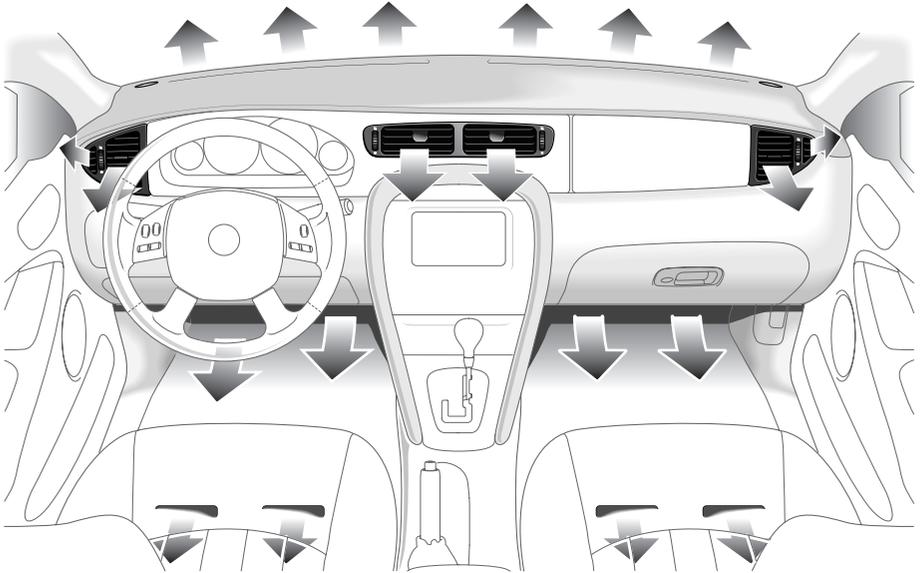
With the exterior lighting switched on, the graphics on the panel controls are illuminated by low level backlighting.

The illumination level is adjusted by the common instrument panel dimmer control.

# Climate Control

---

## AIR DISTRIBUTION



JAG0785

The illustration shows the location of the air vents within the vehicle.

With automatic climate control, the appropriate air distribution is selected automatically when operating in AUTO mode.

On both climate control systems, the distribution of air between the screen, facia and floor level can be manually selected using the panel controls.

The airflow from the facia face level vents is regulated using thumbwheel controls and adjustable direction vanes.

# Automatic Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CONTROL PANEL



JAG0788

1. Blower speed and system on/off.
2. Recirculation/fresh air.
3. Display panel with typical symbols.
4. Celsius/Fahrenheit selector.
5. Automatic operation.
6. Air conditioner on/off.
7. Air distribution.
8. Increase temperature.
9. Decrease temperature.
10. Heated rear screen/door mirrors.
11. Heated front screen (where fitted).
12. Defrost.

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior of the vehicle at the temperature selected by the occupant. The heat input, air conditioning, blower speed, air intake and distribution are adjusted automatically to maintain the desired temperature.

**Note:** It is advisable to allow the system to stabilise before making large changes to the temperature setting, particularly at the start of a journey. See "TEMPERATURE SELECTION" on page 145.

Automatic control (AUTO) may be overridden at any time. Defrost/demist operation is available and also manual selection of blower speed, air distribution, recirculation, air conditioning and windshield heating.

The climate control functions are selected by push buttons and a rotary control. When a button is pressed, selection is confirmed by a beep and illumination of the button LED.

Most functions also have associated graphic symbols displayed on the LCD (liquid crystal display) screen.

# Automatic Climate Control

---

## TO SWITCH THE SYSTEM ON

The climate control system operates in position II (run) of the ignition switch.

With the ignition key turned to the run position, the system will switch on in the operating mode last set.

For normal usage select AUTO mode.

## AUTO MODE



Automatic operation provides a controlled environment over a temperature range of 17°C (61°F) to 31°C (89°F) and should be regarded as the normal operating mode.

To select automatic climate control press the AUTO button; the word AUTO appears on the LCD screen to confirm selection.

Select the required temperature.

Front and rear screen heating and timed air recirculation may be selected in AUTO mode. Selecting any other control will cancel AUTO operation.

Automatic operation cannot be deselected using the AUTO button. To exit AUTO mode, select another mode or press the blower control knob to switch the system off.

## TEMPERATURE SELECTION



Set the required interior temperature with the red and blue arrowed buttons. Press the red button to increase temperature and the blue button to decrease temperature.

The selected temperature will appear on the lower part of the LCD screen.

Pressing the buttons to select the maximum or minimum temperature settings causes the display to change to HI or LO respectively and cancel AUTO mode.

To quickly jump from HI or LO to a convenient midrange temperature of 23°C (73°F), press and hold AUTO for a few seconds.

When AUTO is selected, the system constantly monitors the conditions inside and outside the vehicle. For your maximum comfort, it is advisable to allow the system to stabilise before making large changes to the temperature setting, particularly at the start of a journey.

## EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE

The external (EXT) temperature is displayed at the top of the screen.

## CELSIUS/FAHRENHEIT SELECTION



Press the button to change the scale between degrees Celsius (°C) and degrees Fahrenheit (°F) for the displayed internal and external (EXT) temperatures.

# Automatic Climate Control

## AIR RECIRCULATION

### Timed air recirculation



Press the button briefly to select timed air recirculation.

The fresh air intake is opened and the button LED extinguished at the end of the time out period.

### Latched air recirculation



Press and hold the button for a few seconds to select latched air recirculation. Selection is indicated by the screen symbol and two beeps.

Selecting latched air recirculation cancels AUTO operation.

To deselect latched air recirculation, press the recirculation button again, or select AUTO.



### WARNING:

**Prolonged operation with recirculation selected in cold, damp conditions could result in screen misting.**

## WINDSHIELD DEFROST/DEMIST

### Frost and heavy misting



To remove frost or heavy misting from the windshield, press the DEF button.

- The blower switches on automatically at 70% of maximum speed but the speed can be increased or reduced manually if required.
- Air conditioning switches on automatically (to dehumidify the air) and cannot be deselected.

- Recirculation is cancelled and cannot be selected.
- The front windshield heater and the rear shield heater/door mirror heaters switch on automatically, provided the engine is running.

To deselect defrost mode, press AUTO (recommended operating mode, to maintain a mist-free windshield).

### Light misting



To prevent or remove light windshield misting, select manual air distribution to windshield and feet. See "MANUAL AIR DISTRIBUTION" on page 147.

**Note:** Air conditioning will reduce misting, even when warm airflow is selected: the system will still dehumidify the air.

## HEATED WINDSHIELDS AND DOOR MIRRORS



The front **F** and rear **R** windshield heaters may be switched on and off

in any mode, including system off, but will only operate when the engine is running. The door mirror heaters are also controlled by the rear screen heater button.

The front windshield heater switches off automatically after three minutes. The rear screen and door mirror heaters switch off automatically after six minutes.

The windshield heaters may be manually deselected during the time out period using the push buttons.

In cold ambient conditions, at the start of a journey, the front and rear windshield heaters will switch on automatically for the time out period.

# Automatic Climate Control

---

## AIR CONDITIONING



Press to switch the air conditioning on or off.

The air conditioning system is controlled automatically in AUTO mode to maintain the desired temperature and humidity (even if higher temperature settings are selected). Deselecting A/C cancels AUTO mode.

The air conditioning system is also switched on automatically in defrost mode (DEF) in order to dehumidify the air: it cannot be deselected in this mode.

## BLOWER SPEED



Set the blower speed as required with the rotary control knob. Blower speed is shown as a series of bars on the LCD screen.

When operating in AUTO mode, blower speed is controlled automatically (but not displayed) and any adjustment of the knob will cancel AUTO mode.

**Note:** *In AUTO mode, the blower only operates at low speed, if heating is required, until the engine is warm.*

## MANUAL AIR DISTRIBUTION

Air distribution is automatically controlled in AUTO and defrost modes.

Press one of the four air distribution buttons to cancel the current mode and select manual operation. The symbol for the selected air distribution will appear on the LCD screen.

The air distribution options are:



Airflow directed at face level only; optimum position for cooling interior (if cool airflow selected).



Airflow distributed to the face and feet.



Airflow directed to foot level; optimum position for heating interior (if warm airflow selected).



Airflow distributed to the windshield and feet; select to prevent or remove light misting and when heating the interior.

## TO SWITCH THE SYSTEM OFF

Press in the blower rotary control knob to switch the climate control system off.

If the blower control knob is pressed again, the system will switch on in the previous mode set.

# Automatic Climate Control

---

## RAM AIR

With the climate control system switched off, air recirculation is automatically selected (intake flap closed). To select fresh air with the system off, press one of the air distribution buttons.

With the blower switched off, the fresh airflow results from the forward motion of the vehicle (ram air effect).



### **WARNING:**

**Selecting ram air (or switching the system off when the windows are closed) may increase the possibility of screen misting due to reduced airflow.**

# Touch-screen Climate Control

---

## INFORMATION

The operating information given here refers to touch-screen climate control only.

The vehicle has both driver and passenger (dual zone) red and blue temperature control arrow buttons.

## Controls and displays

The climate control system has its own menu on the touch-screen. A number of other buttons are also used for climate control and are located around the perimeter of the touch-screen. When a perimeter button is pressed, selection of the function is confirmed by a beep and, on most buttons, illumination of a Light Emitting Diode (LED).

An LCD screen below the touch-screen shows the interior temperatures set by the driver and passenger and the external (EXT) ambient temperature.

**Note:** *Using other systems and touch-screen displays, such as audio or navigation, does not affect the climate control settings.*

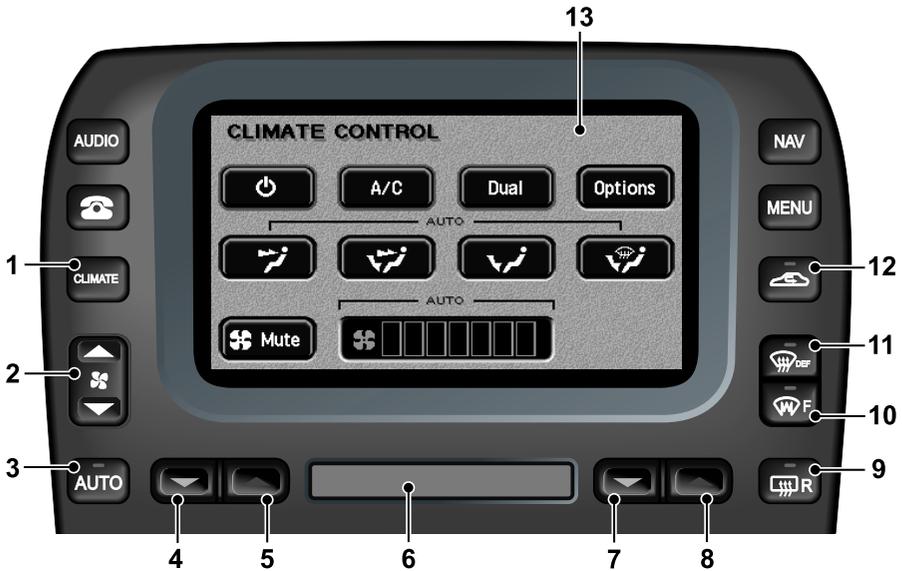
## Panel illumination

With the exterior lighting switched on, the graphics on the panel controls are illuminated by low level backlighting.

The illumination level is adjusted by the common instrument panel dimmer control.

# Touch-screen Climate Control

## CONTROLS



JAG0646

1. Select climate control touch-screen.
2. Adjust blower speed.
3. Select automatic operation.
4. Decrease left-hand zone temperature.
5. Increase left-hand zone temperature.
6. LCD screen: interior and exterior temperatures.
7. Decrease right-hand zone temperature.
8. Increase right-hand zone temperature.
9. Heated rear screen/door mirrors.
10. Heated front screen.
11. Defrost operation.
12. Select air recirculation.
13. Touch-screen.

# Touch-screen Climate Control

## IGNITION ON

The climate control system operates in position **II** of the ignition switch.

When the ignition is switched to position **II** or the engine is started, the Jaguar logo will be displayed briefly followed by the last touch-screen selected (e.g. radio).

The climate control system will be set to the climate operating mode selected previously.

## CLIMATE CONTROLS DISPLAY

There are two climate control touch-screen displays, one for on and the other for off/ram air mode. Smaller pop-up displays appear briefly when selecting air recirculation or adjusting the blower speed.

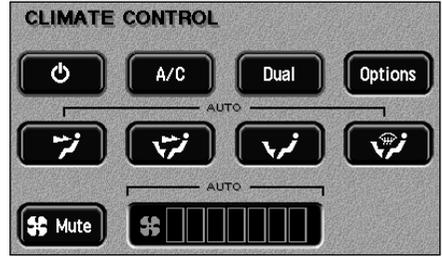
Most climate functions can be selected using the perimeter buttons without displaying the climate touch-screen buttons.



To select the touch-screen display, press the **CLIMATE** button.

To exit the climate control screen, select another system function, e.g. AUDIO.

## AUTO MODE



Automatic operation provides a controlled environment over a temperature range of 17°C (61°F) to 31°C (89°F) and should be regarded as the normal operating mode.



To select automatic climate control press the **AUTO** button and select the required temperature.

The AUTO mode touch-screen is shown above. If the touch-screen is not displayed, press the **CLIMATE** button.

Front and rear screen heating and timed air recirculation may be selected while remaining in AUTO mode. Selecting any other climate control perimeter button or touch-screen button will cancel AUTO operation.

Automatic operation cannot be deselected using the **AUTO** button. To exit AUTO mode, select another climate mode or touch the system on/off button to switch the system off.

# Touch-screen Climate Control

## TEMPERATURE SELECTION



Set the required interior temperature with the red or blue arrowed buttons.

Press the red buttons to increase temperature and the blue buttons to decrease temperature.



The selected temperatures will appear on the LCD screen below the touch-screen.

Pressing the driver's buttons to select the maximum or minimum temperature settings causes the LCD screen to change to HI or LO respectively and cancels AUTO mode.

To quickly jump from HI or LO to a convenient mid-range temperature of 23°C (73°F), press and hold **AUTO** for a few seconds.

## DUAL TEMPERATURE ZONES



With the **Dual** button illuminated, the system provides separate

temperature control of the driver and passenger zones.

Touch **Dual** to deselect dual temperature control; the passenger temperature will change to that of the driver's side. Using the driver's side temperature control buttons will now change both zone temperatures together.

To select dual temperature control, either touch **Dual** or press one of the passenger's side temperature control buttons.

## EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE



The external (EXT) temperature is displayed on the LCD screen.

## CELSIUS/FAHRENHEIT SELECTION

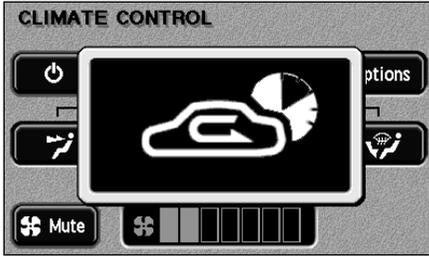


Touch the button to change the scale between degrees Celsius (°C) and degrees

Fahrenheit (°F) for the displayed interior and external temperatures.

# Touch-screen Climate Control

## TIMED AIR RECIRCULATION



JOL2066



Press the button briefly to select air recirculation for a timed period only; the pop-up shown above will appear for a few seconds on top of the currently selected touch-screen.

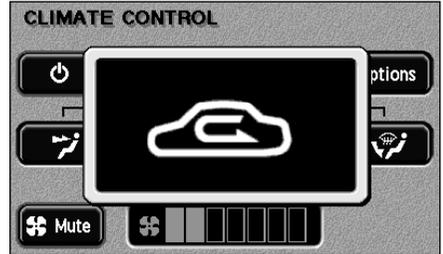
The fresh air intake is opened and the button LED extinguished at the end of the timed period.

### Latched fresh air

Pressing the air recirculation button when the button LED is illuminated will cancel recirculation and allow fresh air into the vehicle.

Deselecting air recirculation cancels AUTO mode.

## LATCHED AIR RECIRCULATION



JOL2067



To latch air recirculation (so that it remains selected), press and hold the air recirculation button until the pop-up changes from the timed to the latched recirculation symbol.

Selection is also indicated by two beeps and the button LED flashing four times then remaining illuminated.

Selecting latched recirculation cancels AUTO mode.

**Caution: Prolonged operation with recirculation selected in cold, damp conditions could result in interior condensation.**

# Touch-screen Climate Control

---

## WINDSHIELD DEFROST/DEMIST

### Frost and heavy misting



To remove frost or heavy misting from the windshield, press the **DEF** button.

- The blower switches on automatically at a high speed but the speed can be increased or decreased manually if required.
- Air conditioning switches on automatically and cannot be deselected.
- Recirculation is cancelled and cannot be selected.
- The front windshield heater and the rear windshield heater/door mirror heaters switch on automatically, provided the engine is running.

To deselect defrost mode, press **DEF** again, or press **AUTO** (recommended operating mode).

### Light misting



To prevent or remove light windshield misting, select manual air distribution to windshield and feet. See “MANUAL AIR DISTRIBUTION” on page 155.

## HEATED WINDSHIELDS AND DOOR MIRRORS



The front windshield heater (F) and the rear windshield heater (R) may be switched on and off in any mode, including system off, but only operate when the engine



is running. The door mirror heaters are also controlled by the rear windshield heater button.

The front windshield heater (where fitted) switches off automatically after four minutes. The rear windshield and door mirror heaters switch off automatically after ten minutes.

The windshield heaters may be manually deselected during the time-out period using the buttons.

In cold ambient conditions, at the start of a journey, the front and rear windshield heaters will switch on automatically for the timed period.

Where a front windshield heater is not fitted, the windshield has a wiper park zone heater which operates automatically with no manual control.

**Note:** *The top three lines of the rear windshield pattern are a concealed antenna and do not defrost the rear windshield.*

# Touch-screen Climate Control

## AIR CONDITIONING



Touch the A/C button to switch the air conditioning on or off.

The air conditioning system is controlled automatically in AUTO mode. Deselecting A/C cancels AUTO mode.

The air conditioning system is also switched on automatically in defrost mode (DEF) but cannot be deselected.

## BLOWER SPEED



Set the blower speed as required using the rocker button. Blower speed is shown as a series of bars on the touch-screen.

If the blower speed is changed while a non-climate control touch-screen is displayed, a pop-up display showing the blower speed bars will appear for a short period.

When operating in AUTO mode, blower speed is controlled automatically (but not displayed) and any adjustment of the button will cancel AUTO mode.

**Note:** *In AUTO mode, the blower will only operate at low speed until the engine is warm, if heating is required in the vehicle.*

## BLOWER MUTE



To reduce the interior noise level, the blower speed may be quickly reduced to a preset level by touching the Mute button.

Selecting Mute will cancel AUTO mode, but touching the Mute button again will return operation to the previous state.

When JaguarVoice is fitted, the climate control system will automatically prevent any increase in blower speed while speech commands are given.

**Note:** *The Mute function should only be used for short periods, as it reduces the efficiency of the climate control system.*

## MANUAL AIR DISTRIBUTION

Air distribution is automatically controlled in AUTO and defrost modes.

Touch one of the four air distribution buttons on the screen to cancel the current mode and select manual operation.

The air distribution options are:



Airflow directed at face level only; select to cool the interior.



Airflow distributed to the face and feet.



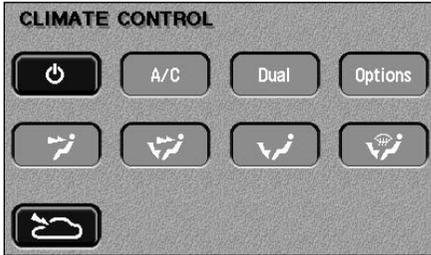
Airflow directed to feet level; select to heat the interior.



Airflow distributed to the windshield and feet; select to prevent or remove light misting and when heating the interior.

# Touch-screen Climate Control

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL OFF



JOL2068

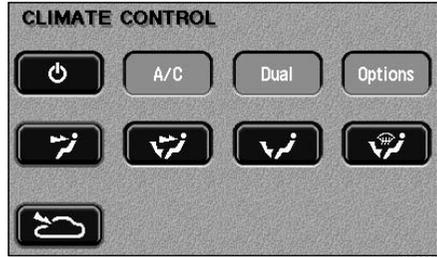


To switch the system off, touch the system on/off button on the climate control screen. The touch-screen will change to the system off/ram air climate control screen above.

Pressing the system on/off button will return the system to the previous state.

It is recommended that **AUTO** is selected to switch the system on again.

## RAM AIR



JOL2069

With the climate control system switched off, air recirculation is automatically selected (intake flap closed).

To select fresh air with the system off, touch the ram air button (bottom left on illustration). The intake flap will open with air distribution to face level automatically selected.

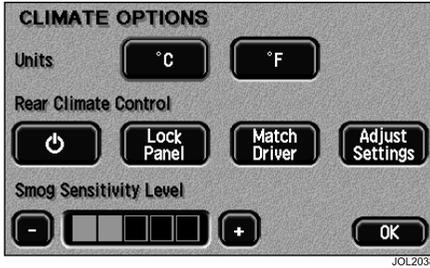
Any of the other air distribution modes may be selected manually using the touch-screen.

With the blower switched off, the fresh airflow results from the forward motion of the vehicle (ram air mode).

# Touch-screen Climate Control

---

## CLIMATE OPTIONS



**Options** The Options button is displayed in place of the °C/°F button if the optional smog sensor and/or rear climate control panel (4-zone system) are fitted.

Touching Options displays the Celsius (°C) and Fahrenheit (°F) selection buttons. The display also shows either the rear control panel buttons or the smog sensor setting or both.

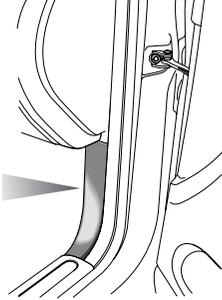
# Inertia Switch

## RESETTING THE INERTIA SWITCH



### WARNING:

To reduce the risk of fire or personal injury, do not reset the inertia switch if you see or smell fuel.



JAG0789

In the event of an accident, an inertia switch will trip, isolating the fuel supply. Once the switch has tripped it must be reset before attempting to restart the engine.

The inertia switch is located in the footwell behind the trim on the right-hand side of the vehicle, forward of the front door post, below the fascia. A finger access hole allows the driver to reset the switch.

If no fuel leak is apparent, reset the inertia switch as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to position **0**.
2. Press down the flexible cover on the top of the inertia switch.
3. Turn the ignition switch to position **II**, pause for a few seconds, then return the key to position **0**.
4. Make a further check for fuel leaks.

# Emergency Starting

---

## JUMP LEADS

Both the booster and discharged battery should be treated with great care when using jump leads. Always use high quality leads capable of carrying the starter current of the vehicle to be started.

Before commencing, the following precautions must be taken:

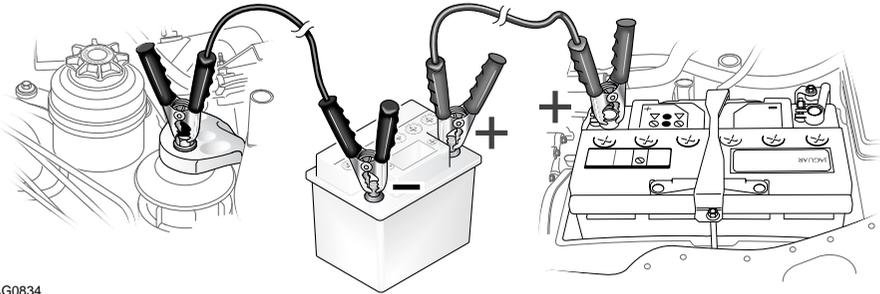
- When the battery of another vehicle is being used, ensure that the vehicles do not touch. Alternatively, remove the charged battery and place near to, not on, the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- Ensure that both vehicles have all electrical services off, the parkbrake is on and, with automatic transmission, **P** is selected.
- Where the jump leads are of a different colour, e.g. red and black, use red for positive (+). This aids identification and helps to avoid crossing positive (+) to negative (-). Take extra care to avoid crossing the polarity when using cables of the same colour.

## Caution:

- **If using a jump start vehicle, under no circumstances should the vehicles come into contact with each other. This could establish an earth connection, which may cause sparks and damage.**
- **Do not run the jump start vehicle's engine when boost starting a Jaguar vehicle. If the jump start vehicle's engine is running and the jump leads are disconnected, damage to the Jaguar vehicle's electrical system will result.**
- **The booster battery voltage must not exceed 12 volts.**

# Emergency Starting

## EMERGENCY START PROCEDURE



JAG0834



### WARNING:

**Do not connect the negative jump lead directly to the negative (-) terminal of the discharged vehicle.**

The following procedure must be followed exactly, being careful not to cause sparks:

1. Apply the parkbrake, select **P** and turn off all the vehicle's electrical services.
2. Open the hood to gain access to the battery.
3. Unclip the battery cover.
4. Attach one end of the red jump lead to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery and the other end to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery. Make sure that a good connection is made.
5. Attach one end of the black jump lead to the negative (-) terminal of the booster battery.
6. Attach the other end of the black jump lead to the right-hand engine mount. Make sure a good connection is made.
7. When started, allow the engine to idle for five minutes before disconnecting the cables.
8. Disconnect the black jump lead from the engine mount point and the booster battery negative (-) terminal.
9. Disconnect the red jump lead from the positive (+) terminals of both batteries.
10. Refit the battery box cover.

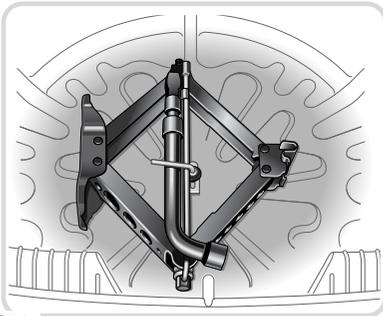
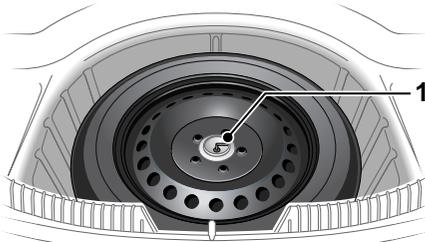
# Wheel Changing

## SPARE WHEEL LOCATION



### WARNING:

- It can be dangerous to change a wheel when the vehicle is on a slope or soft, uneven ground.
- Wheels are extremely heavy. Take care when lifting and particularly when removing and replacing a wheel in its storage position in the luggage compartment.



JAG0791

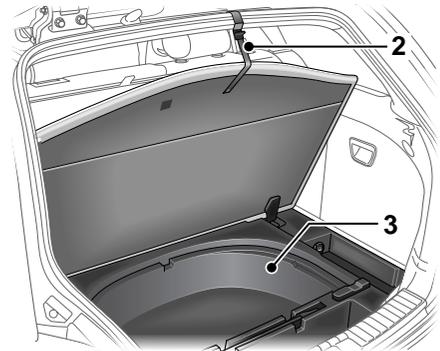
Be prepared for a flat tire. Know where equipment is stowed and read the wheel changing and jacking instructions carefully.

Pull off the road completely, clear of all traffic and park on as level, solid ground as possible. Switch on hazard warning lights and, where legally required (Canada and Mexico), display the warning triangle.

The spare wheel and jacking equipment are stored under the luggage compartment floor panel.

To remove the spare wheel, lift the luggage compartment floor panel. If a temporary-use spare wheel is stowed then the tray will need to be removed to gain access to the wheel. Unscrew the retaining nut **1** and remove the spare wheel. Remove the jack and wheel nut wrench (and locking wheel nut kit).

**Wagon:** The floor panel of Wagon models is fitted with a retaining strap **2**, which can be hooked over the top lip of the luggage compartment opening. This holds the floor panel out of the way, to make access to the spare wheel easier. Remove the stowage tray **3** to access the spare wheel.



JAG0792

# Wheel Changing

## TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL

Observe the following warnings before using the spare wheel.

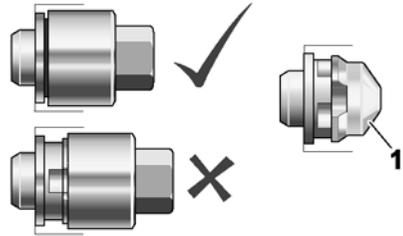
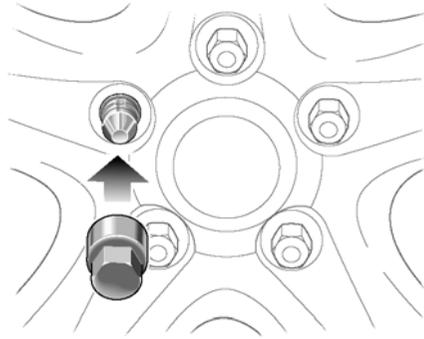


### WARNING:

- Please note temporary-use spare wheel warning label. Adhere to instructions on the label. Failure to comply can be dangerous.
- When a temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, drive with caution and replace with the specified wheel and tire as soon as possible.
- Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel and tire assembly at one time.
- The temporary-use spare wheel must be inflated to the correct pressure. Refer to the tire pressure label, located on the B pillar (USA only). See “Tire pressure label/placard (USA only)” on page 209. For Canada and Mexico only, the label is on the end of the dashboard on the driver’s side of the vehicle.
- When a temporary-use spare wheel is fitted to the vehicle, the maximum speed permitted is 50 mph (80 km/h).

**Note:** Maintenance information for the temporary-use spare wheel is the same as given for normal tires.

## LOCKING WHEEL NUTS



JOL2666

Where Jaguar locking wheel nuts are fitted (one on each wheel), they can only be removed using the correct key socket.

The locking wheel nut comprises two grooved parts, front and rear, which must be turned together to allow the nut to be fitted or removed.

To remove the nut, the front and rear grooves must be aligned. Locate the key socket in the grooves and push it fully over both parts of the nut. Fit the wheel nut wrench over the key socket and loosen the locking wheel nut.

Attempting to remove the nut without the correct key socket (such as attempted theft) or with the socket not located over the rear part of the nut, will cause the front part only 1 to turn.

# Wheel Changing

---

If this has happened, rotate the front part with the key socket until the grooves are re-aligned and then push the socket fully over the nut.

Should a new key socket be required, contact your Jaguar Dealer. Proof of vehicle ownership will be required.

## WHEEL CHANGING



### WARNING:

**Before attempting to lift the vehicle with the jack, block a wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being replaced to prevent the vehicle from rolling when jacked up.**



### WARNING:

**Never work under the vehicle using only the jack as a support, always use axle stands or suitable supports under the jacking points.**



### WARNING:

**Do not attempt to lift the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point.**



### WARNING:

**Ensure that the parkbrake/handbrake is fully applied.**



### WARNING:

**When the temporary-use spare wheel has been fitted, drive with caution and replace with the specified wheel and tire as soon as possible.**

**Caution: Ensure that when anyone requires to raise the vehicle that the jack is correctly positioned to avoid any damage to the vehicle sills or sill panels. Use only the correct jacking points; never use suspension components, bumpers or any other part of the body to lift the vehicle.**

1. Ensure that all passengers are in a safe place, clear of the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply the parkbrake.
3. For automatic vehicles, select gear position **P** (Park).
4. Ensure that the jack is placed on firm and level ground.

Before raising the vehicle, extend the telescopic wheel nut wrench and slacken, but do not remove the wheel nuts.

Observe the instructions printed on the jack.

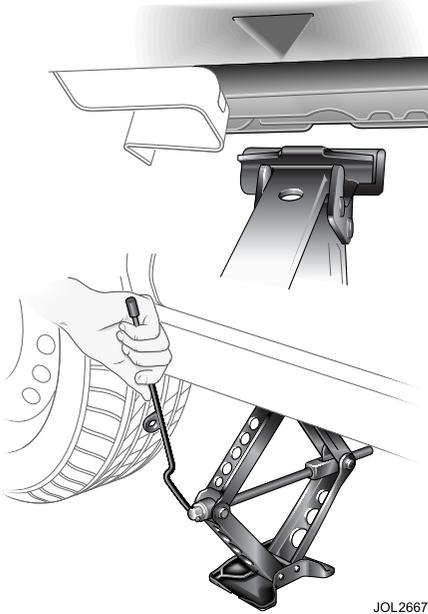
Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle during wheel changing, and only use the jack which is stored in the vehicle.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is only supported by a jack.

**Note:** *When one rear wheel is lifted off the ground the selection of the **P** (Park) position will not prevent the vehicle from moving and possibly slipping off the jack.*

# Wheel Changing

---



JOL2667

There are four jacking points, two each side of the vehicle on the underside of the floor. These provide positive location for the jack.

Two indented, triangular jack location points are provided on each sill cover.

The simplest way to correctly locate the jacking point is to feel along the sill panel to the triangular indentation and then fit the jack head to the body flange as shown in the previous illustration.

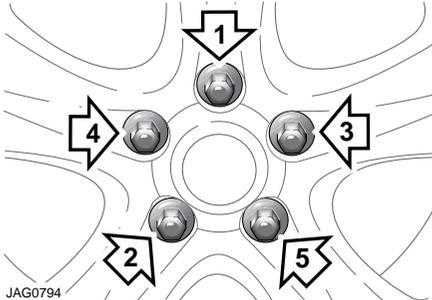
Place the jack squarely beneath the appropriate jacking point. Ensure that the jack head is fully engaged. Carefully raise the vehicle by turning the handle. Stop jacking the vehicle when the tire just clears the ground. Minimum tire lift gives maximum vehicle stability.

Remove the wheel nuts and the wheel.

When changing the alloy road wheels, transfer the centre badge to the replacement wheel (when a full size spare wheel is used). Using the rounded end of the wheel nut wrench handle from the inside of the wheel, push the centre badge from its housing. Push the centre badge into the replacement wheel. If the temporary-use spare wheel is to be fitted, keep the centre badge safely and fit it to the repaired full size wheel when it has been refitted.

# Wheel Changing

## Fitting the spare wheel



Fit the spare wheel and loosely secure with the wheel nuts.

Using the wheel nut wrench, lightly tighten the wheel nuts alternately using the sequence shown in the illustration.

Lower the jack and tighten the wheel nuts alternately, **DO NOT OVERTIGHTEN**.

At the earliest opportunity have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to:

Alloy wheels:

- 103 Nm  $\pm$  15.5 (76.0 lbf.ft.  $\pm$  11.4).

Steel wheels:

- 80 Nm  $\pm$  12.0 (59.0 lbf.ft.  $\pm$  8.5).

These torque figures must not be exceeded.

## Stowing the equipment

Stow the jack and wrench.

Stow the replaced road wheel in the luggage compartment, position the wheel and secure with the retaining nut. Reposition the luggage compartment floor panel.

**Note:** *Examine the jack occasionally and clean and grease the threads to ensure it is always ready for an emergency.*

# Vehicle Recovery

---

## RECOMMENDED METHODS



### WARNING:

When the engine is not running the steering and brakes will no longer be power assisted.

Therefore, be prepared for relatively heavy steering and the need for greatly increased brake pedal pressure.

### Caution:

- The preferred and recommended vehicle recovery method is by using a flat bed transporter.
- Ensure that the recovery team do not tow with sling-type equipment since damage to the bodywork may result.

The removable towing eye is primarily for emergency use when towing for SHORT DISTANCES, e.g. removing the vehicle if it is causing an obstruction or for winching the vehicle onto a recovery transporter.

## VEHICLE FAILURE

Always obey towing regulations. In certain countries the registration number of the towing vehicle and an ON TOW sign or warning triangle must be displayed in a prominent position at the rear of the vehicle being towed.

When being towed, the vehicle's gear selector lever must be in neutral (position **N**) with the ignition key turned to position **II** to release the steering lock and render the indicators, horn and brake lights operational.

## All-wheel drive vehicles

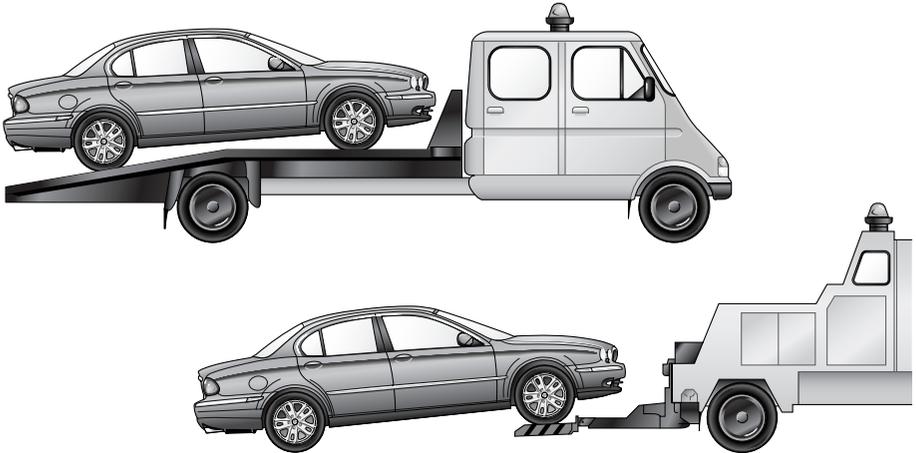
### Caution:

- This vehicle has an all-wheel drive (AWD) transmission system. Do NOT tow the vehicle with the front wheels lifted unless the propshaft to the rear wheels is disconnected at the final drive flange. If the propshaft is not disconnected, the rotating rear wheels will force the front wheels to rotate, even with the gear selector in neutral.
- The vehicle can be towed with all four wheels on the ground, provided there is no damage to the transmission, for a maximum distance of 30 miles (50 kilometres) with the speed not exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- To prevent damage whilst an AWD vehicle is being towed with the rear wheels on the ground, towing distance must be restricted to 0.5 miles (0.8 kilometres). Towing speed must not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).

# Vehicle Recovery

---

## TRANSPORTING



JOL2669

When the vehicle is being transported on a trailer or vehicle flat bed transporter, the parkbrake must be applied, the wheels chocked and the automatic gear selector lever moved to position **N** or **D** but NEVER to **P**.

The vehicle must be securely tied down to the transporter or trailer. There are four transporter tie-down brackets on the vehicle underbody. Do not attach tie-down hooks to the towing eye.

### **Suspended towing**

Ensure that the recovery team do not tow with sling-type equipment since damage to the bodywork may result.

**Caution: Do not tow an all-wheel drive (AWD) vehicle with the front wheels lifted unless the propshaft to the rear wheels is disconnected at the final drive flange. If the propshaft is not disconnected, the rotating rear wheels will force the front wheels to rotate, even with the gear selector in neutral.**

# Vehicle Recovery

## TOWING EYE



### WARNING:

The towing eyes at the front and rear of the vehicle are designed for on-road recovery only. If they are used for any other purpose it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.



### WARNING:

Never use the towing eyes to tow a trailer. Doing so may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

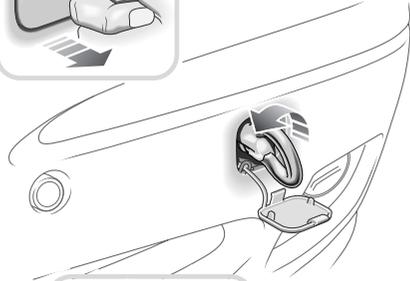
A screw-in towing eye is provided in the luggage compartment with the jack and can be fitted to the front or rear of the vehicle.

**Note:** The towing eye has a left-hand thread and must be turned in an counterclockwise direction when fitting.

### Caution:

- The towing eye is not suitable for solid bar towing.
- Care must be taken to avoid damaging the bumpers.

## Front tow point



JAG0684

The front towing point is located behind a square cover on the face of the bumper on the left-hand side of the vehicle. To access the towing point, push the top of the tow point cover inwards and upwards, which will cause the cover to pop out of place. Lift the cover from the access hole. The tow point cover is attached to the vehicle by a retaining strap.

Screw the towing eye into the vehicle, right up to the shoulder.

After removal of the towing eye, insert the top edge of the tow point cover into the access hole, and press the bottom edge of the cover into place.

# Vehicle Recovery

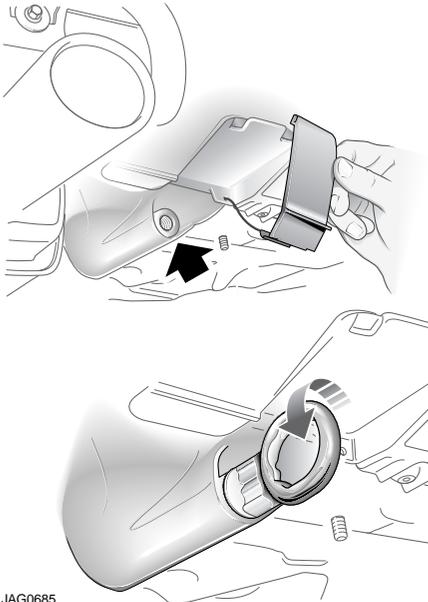
---

## Rear tow point



### **WARNING:**

**Avoid body contact with a hot exhaust pipe when fitting the eye to the rear towing point.**



JAG0685

The rear towing point is alongside the left-hand exhaust pipe.

Remove the small cover from the bumper. Remove the bung and screw the towing eye into the vehicle, right up to the shoulder.

# Bulb Renewal

## OVERVIEW

It is important that only Jaguar bulbs of the type specified are used when renewing bulbs.

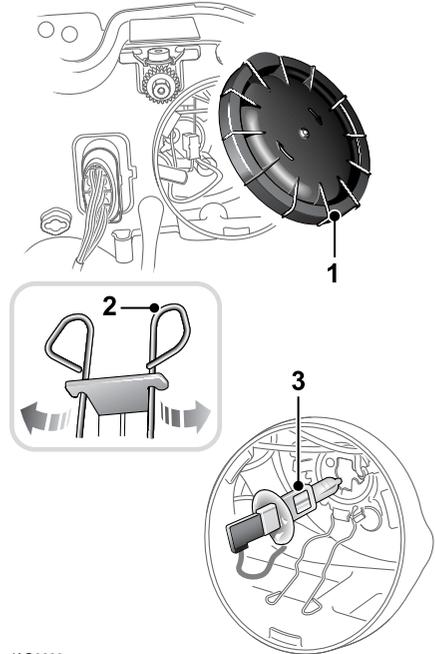
Before renewing bulbs, switch off the ignition and light switches.

**Caution: Halogen type bulbs will be damaged if touched by hand or contaminated with oil or grease. It is important to use clean gloves or cloth when handling a bulb which is to be used again. A contaminated bulb may be cleaned with methylated spirit before refitting.**

## HIGH BEAM (INNER) HEADLIGHT

Open the hood.

For access to the left-hand side bulb, remove the battery.



JAG0690

Turn the circular cover **1** counterclockwise and remove.

Press the spring clip **2** towards the bulb and downwards to release the bulb.

Remove the bulb/connector **3** from the headlight assembly. Pull the connector from the bulb.

Attach the connector to the new bulb, type H1 Super for high beam, and fit to the headlight. The bulb will only correctly fit in one position.

Engage the spring clips to retain the bulb and then fit the circular cover.

Refit the top cover and close the hood.

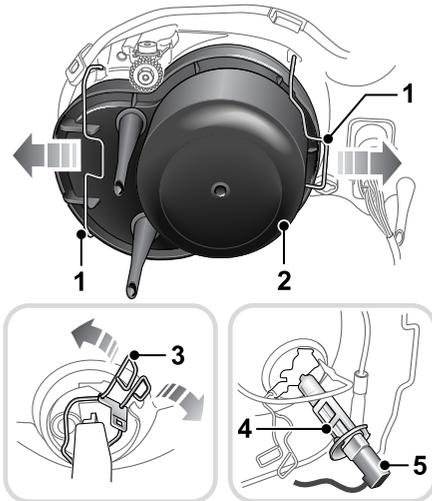
It is advisable to have the headlight aim checked by a Dealer after bulb renewal.

# Bulb Renewal

## DIP BEAM (OUTER) HEADLIGHT

Open the hood.

For access to the left-hand side bulb, remove the battery.



JAG0691

Slide open the two spring clips **1** and remove the cover **2**.

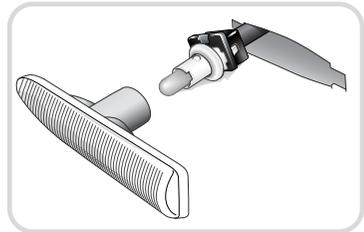
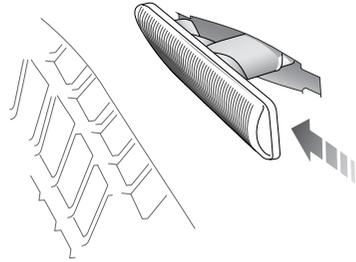
Press the spring clip **3** inwards and push towards the bulb **4** to release the bulb and then remove the bulb from the light unit. Pull the connector **5** from the bulb.

Fit a new bulb to the connector, type H1 for dipped beam.

Fit the bulb to the light unit, the bulb will only correctly fit in one position. Engage the spring clips to retain the bulb and then fit the cover and retain using the two spring clips.

Close the hood.

## SIDE REPEATER INDICATOR



JAG0692

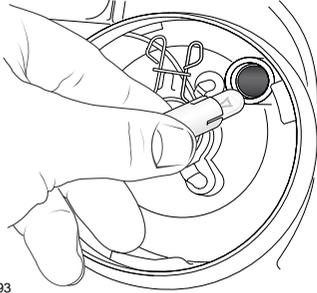
Remove the light unit by pushing the lens towards the front of the vehicle to compress the spring clip and then pull the rear outwards to remove the complete unit.

Twist the bulb holder counterclockwise and pull it from the lens. Pull the capless bulb from the holder and fit a new one of the correct type, WY5W. Fit the bulb holder to the lens.

Place the inner rear of the lens unit into the recess and then push the front of the lens inwards until it clicks into place.

# Bulb Renewal

## FRONT PARKING (SIDE) LIGHT



JAG0693

Open the hood.

The front parking lights are contained within the inner headlight units.

For access to the left-hand side bulb, remove the battery and the battery box.

Turn the circular cover counterclockwise and remove.

Pull the small bulb holder from the headlight unit.

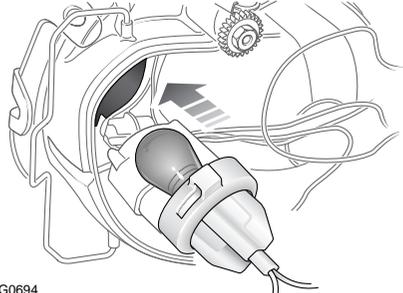
Pull the capless bulb from the holder and fit a new one of the correct type, W5W.

Push the bulb holder into the headlight unit.

Fit the circular cover.

Close the hood.

## FRONT DIRECTION INDICATOR



JAG0694

Open the hood.

The bulb is contained within the outer headlight.

For access to the left-hand side bulb, remove the battery and the battery box.

Slide open the two spring clips (outer clip difficult on right-hand flasher) and remove the cover.

Turn the holder a quarter turn counterclockwise and remove the bulb and holder.

Remove the bulb and fit a new one of the correct type, 3457AK.

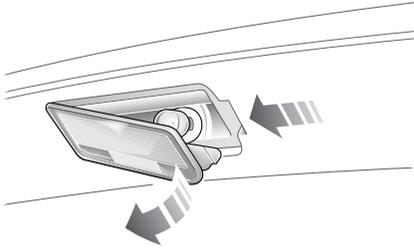
Fit the holder to the light unit, it will only fit in one position.

Fit the cover and retain using the two spring clips.

Close the hood.

# Bulb Renewal

## NUMBER PLATE LIGHT



JAG0695

Push the lens clip sideways and remove the lens from the vehicle.

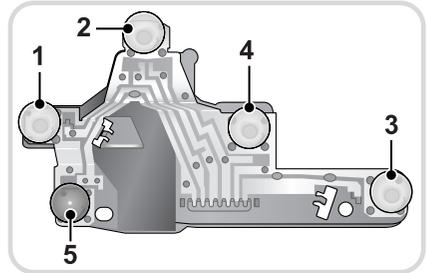
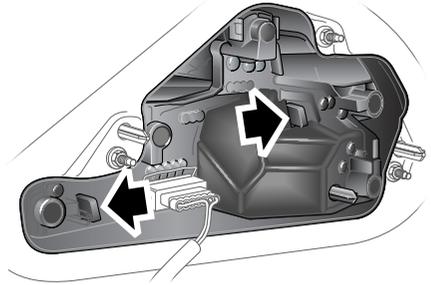
Remove the bulb and fit a new one of the correct type, W5W.

Refit the lens by pressing it firmly into the recess until it clicks into place.

## FRONT FOG LIGHT

It is recommended that the front fog light bulb is renewed by a Jaguar Dealer.

## REAR LIGHT ASSEMBLY - SEDAN



JAG0696

The rear light assembly has the following bulbs:

1. Reverse light, type P21W.
2. Stop/tail light, type P21/5W.
3. Fog light, type P21W.
4. Tail light, type P21/5W.
5. Direction indicator, type PY21W.

Ensure that the lights and ignition switch are OFF before removing any bulbs.

Open the luggage compartment, loosen the side carpet and unclip the rear light bulb carrier.

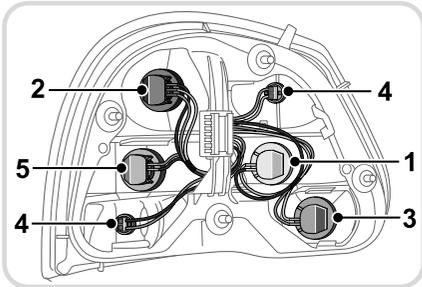
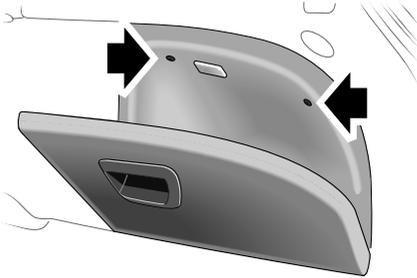
Remove the faulty bulb and fit a new one of the correct type, as illustrated on the bulb holder. Fitment of the correct type is essential.

# Bulb Renewal

Refit the bulb carrier assembly, ensuring that the clips are correctly secured.

Refit the carpet.

## REAR LIGHT ASSEMBLY - WAGON



JAG0697

The rear light assembly has the following bulbs:

1. Reverse light, type P21W.
2. Stop/tail light, type P21/5W.
3. Fog light, type P21W.
4. Tail light, type P21/5W.
5. Direction indicator, type PY21W.

Ensure that the lights and ignition switch are OFF before removing any bulbs.

Open the luggage compartment and remove the side compartment cover. Use a screwdriver to undo the fastenings (arrowed above) and remove the side compartment trim.

Each bulb is held in place by a separate bulb holder. Identify which bulb to replace, turn the holder a quarter turn counterclockwise and remove the bulb and holder.

### Note:

- If the vehicle is fitted with a subwoofer, remove the trim surrounding the speaker and access the right-hand light assembly through the cut-out in the subwoofer housing.
- To access the left-hand light assembly, remove the trim surrounding the CD changer and navigation unit (where fitted) by undoing the trim fastenings with a screwdriver.
- The rear view of the right-hand light assembly is shown. The left-hand assembly is a mirror image of the right-hand assembly.

If the vehicle is fitted with a subwoofer and a CD changer it is recommended that the bulb(s) be changed by your Jaguar Dealer.

Remove the faulty bulb and fit a new one of the correct type, as illustrated on the bulb holder. Fitment of the correct type is essential.

## HIGH MOUNTED STOP LIGHT

The high mounted stop light is an LED type. Should one or more LEDs fail then the unit may cease to meet legal requirements and must be renewed immediately by a Jaguar Dealer.

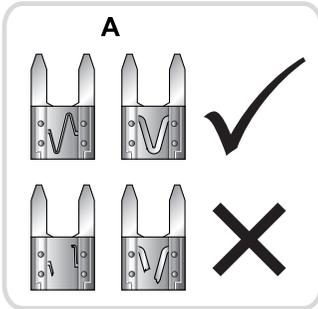
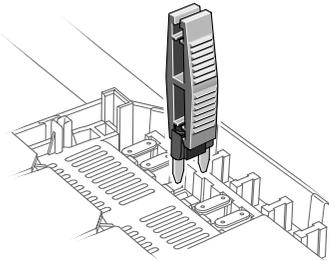
# Fuses

## FUSE TYPES

Fuse failure is identified by an inoperative circuit.

Do not fit a new fuse if the wiring is damaged; contact a Jaguar Dealer. After renewing a fuse have the circuit checked by a Jaguar Dealer.

Make sure the new fuse is the correct rating (amperage).



JAG0698

Although there are several types of fuse used in the vehicle, only mini-fuses **A** can be changed by the owner.

A special tool for removing and replacing mini-fuses is provided in the engine compartment fuse box, together with spare fuses.

Use only the spare fuses supplied. If a spare fuse is used, renew it with a Jaguar approved fuse of the **same** amperage rating.

## REPLACING A FUSE

Make sure the new fuse is the correct rating (amperage). Fuses are colour coded according to the amperage and the rating is also marked on each fuse. The colour code is as follows:

Tan	5 amp
Dark Red	7.5 amp
Red	10 amp
Light Blue	15 amp
Yellow	20 amp
Clear	25 amp
Light Green	30 amp

### Mini-fuse replacement

Push the tool on to the suspect mini-fuse and withdraw it.

If the wire in the fuse is broken, the fuse has blown.

Fit a new fuse using the tool.



**WARNING:**

**Do not fit a fuse of a different amperage from that removed. The electrical circuits may become overloaded with the subsequent possibility of a fire.**



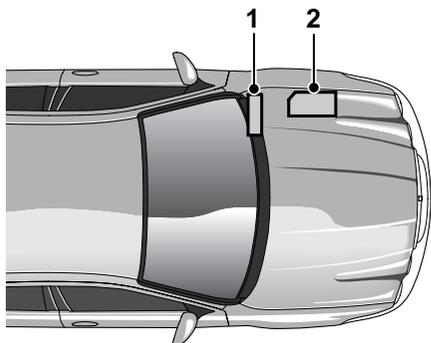
**WARNING:**

**No attempt should be made to repair a fuse that has blown as this may cause a fire hazard or serious damage elsewhere in the electrical circuit.**

# Fuses

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

There are two fuse boxes fitted to the vehicle, each one containing fuses protecting a different group of circuits.



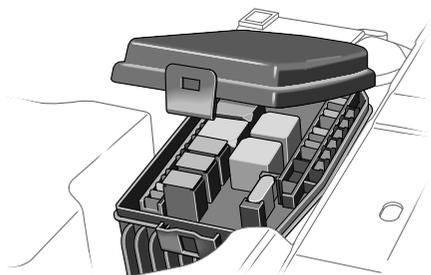
JAG0699

They are located in:

1. The passenger compartment.
2. The engine compartment.

**Caution:** When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture, and refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

### Engine compartment fuse box



JAG0700

The fuse box is located in the engine compartment on the left-hand side adjacent to the battery.

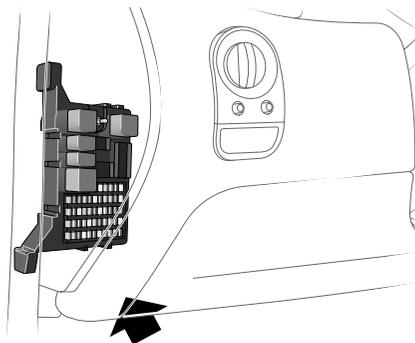
Remove the fuse box lid by pressing the retaining lug at the front of the lid and lifting the lid clear of the rear hinges.

A tool for removing the mini-fuses is located in the fuse box.

When refitting, relocate the fuse box lid in the hinges at the rear of the fuse box and press the retaining lug at the front of the lid into place.

### Passenger compartment fuse box

The passenger compartment fuse box is located on the left-hand side of the vehicle, behind the lower facia.



JAG0702

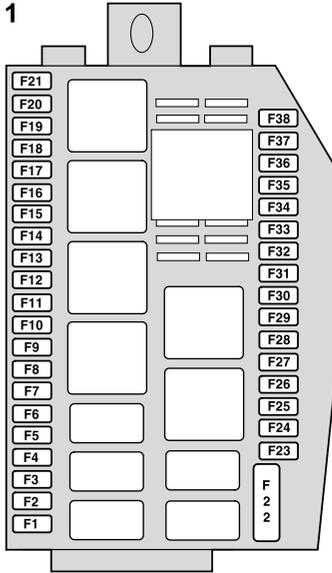
The fuse box must be accessed by reaching underneath the facia.

A tool for removing the mini-fuses is located in the engine compartment fuse box.

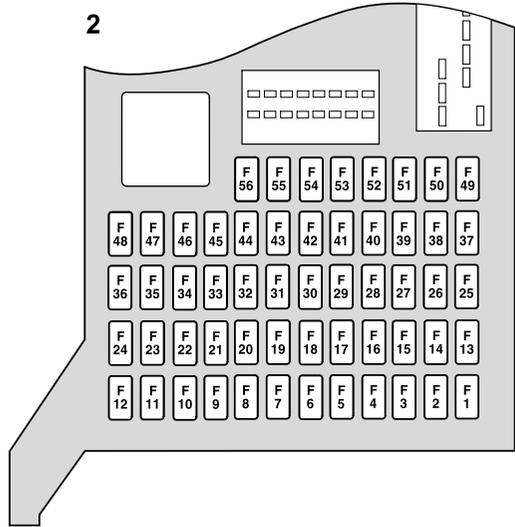
A torch or flashlight may be required to properly identify the fuses.

# Fuses

## FUSE POSITIONS



JAG0703



1. Engine compartment fuse box.
2. Passenger compartment fuse box.

# Fuses

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSES (1)

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Circuit
F1	10	Right-hand high beam.
F2	15	Front fog lights, master light switch.
F3	20	Not used.
F4	10	Left-hand high beam.
F5	10	Air conditioning compressor clutch.
F6	7.5	Generator.
F7	5	Not used.
F8	30	Wiper switch.
F9	30	Wiper switch, windshield washer pump, wiper motor.
F10	15	Ignition coils.
F11	15	Automatic transmission control module.
F12	7.5	Not used.
F13	5	Traction control system, anti-lock braking system, dynamic stability control system.
F14	30	Heated front windshield left-hand side.
F15	30	Heated front windshield right-hand side.
F16	5	Radiator fans speed control.
F17	10	Fuel injectors.
F18	10	Canister purge valve, airflow meter, inlet manifold tuning valve, canister close valve, vacuum module.
F19	10	Engine control module. Throttle motor relay.
F20	30	Oxygen sensor heaters B.
F21	30	Oxygen sensor heaters A.
F22	60	Not used.
F23		Not used.
F24	30	Power wash pump.
F25		Not used.
F26		Not used.
F27	15	Transit relay, vacuum module, battery-backed sounder.
F28		Not used.
F29	20	Left-hand dip beam, master light switch (autolights), head light levelling, instrument panel.
F30	20	Right-hand dipped beam.

# Fuses

---

<b>Fuse No</b>	<b>Rating (amps)</b>	<b>Circuit</b>
F31	15	Not used.
F32	15	Automatic transmission control module.
F33		Not used.
F34	30	Starter motor solenoid.
F35	5	Ignition relay coil.
F36	5	Engine control module.
F37		Not used.
F38	20	Horns (petrol only).

# Fuses

## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSES (2)

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Circuit
F1		Not used.
F2	10	Instrument panel, auto-dimming mirror, reverse light switch, reverse lights.
F3	30	Passenger seat adjustment motors.
F4	20	Accessory connectors.
F5	20	Rear wiper (Wagon only).
F6	5	TPMS Ignition supply
F7	10	On board diagnostics, heated front seat modules, rain sensing system, JaguarVoice.
F8	20	Heated front seat modules.
F9	10	Driver's seat memory function.
F10	15	Sunroof module, SRX antenna.
F11	20	Left-hand (front and rear) electric window motors.
F12	10	JaguarVoice.
F13	5	TPMS Battery supply.
F14	30	Heated rear windshield.
F15	10	Heated door mirrors.
F16	30	Driver's seat adjustment motors.
F17	20	Fuel pump driver module and relay.
F18	15	Rear accessory socket (Wagon only).
F19	30	Tow-bar module. Rear accessory socket (Wagon only).
F20	30	Premium ICE amplifier unit.
F21	20	Right-hand (front and rear) electric window motors.
F22	15	Door lock module.
F23	20	Rear windshield wash pump (Wagon only).
F24	20	Windshield wash pump.
F25	5	On board diagnostics.
F26	10	Rotary switch.
F27	5	Touch-screen.
F28	15	Front and rear accessory sockets.
F29	7.5	Rear fog lights.
F30	5	In-car telephone, PSE.
F31	15	Ignition switch.
F32	5	On board diagnostics.
F33	5	Park aid.

# Fuses

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Circuit
F34	10	Reverse switch.
F35	15	Direction power module.
F36	20	Throttle motor relay.
F37	30	Climate control blower motor.
F38	15	Exterior light switch.
F39	10	HID module, air conditioning ECU, blower motor relay coil.
F40	5	Sunroof module, auto-dimming mirror, power window motors and switches.
F41	5	Passenger air bag light, passenger seat weight sensor.
F42	5	Power steering module.
F43	10	Instrument panel, telematics display, ICE head unit, antenna module, navigation system, park aid, JaguarVoice, In-car telephone, accessory relay coil.
F44	15	Navigation system ECU, CD player, ICE head unit.
F45	10	Air conditioning ECU.
F46	7.5	Power fold back door mirrors.
F47	7.5	Left-hand side (parking) lights.
F48	7.5	Right-hand side (parking) lights.
F49	10	Air conditioning ECU, interior courtesy lights, roof console, in-car sensor.
F50	5	Automatic transmission control module.
F51	7.5	Brake switch.
F52	15	Cigar lighter.
F53	10	Air bag module ignition supply.
F54	5	Instrument panel ignition supply.
F55	5	Number plate lights, glove compartment light, Instrument panel.
F56		Not used.

# Fire Extinguisher

## DEALER FITTED FIRE EXTINGUISHER

Many countries (including Mexico) make it compulsory to carry a fire extinguisher. Your Jaguar Dealer can supply and fit one.

## FACTORY FITTED FIRE EXTINGUISHER

### (Where fitted)

Some countries have a factory fitted fire extinguisher which contains 1.0 kg (2.2 lb) of BC powder pressurised with nitrogen to a working pressure of 12 bar (180 psi) at 20°C (68°F).

This extinguisher can be used on liquid fires, electrical equipment fires and, if no explosion risk, gasoline fires.



### WARNING:

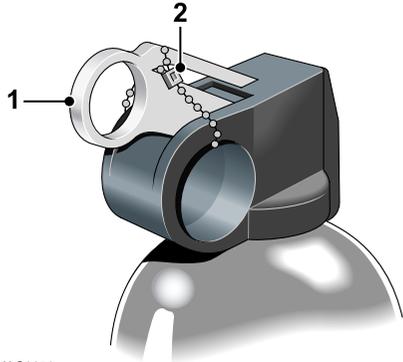
**Do not test the fire extinguisher prior to use. Partial discharge will render the extinguisher inoperative.**



### WARNING:

**Do not use the fire extinguisher closer than 8 feet (2.4 m) to the base of a liquid fire as the force may splatter the burning liquid to the surrounding area.**

## Operating the fire extinguisher



JAG0650

1. Unclip and remove the extinguisher from the bracket.
2. Put your finger through the yellow safety wedge ring **1** and pull hard to break the safety strap **2** and then remove the wedge. The operating lever will be exposed.
3. Hold the extinguisher upright and aim at the base of the fire.
4. Press the lever down firmly.
5. Release the lever to stop the flow of powder.

## MAINTENANCE

Every six months:

- Remove the extinguisher from its bracket and check that the nozzle is clear.
- Check that the safety wedge strap **2** is secure.

Check the pressure gauge on the base of the extinguisher. If the gauge is in the red area report it to your Jaguar Dealer immediately as the extinguisher may not work in an emergency.

# General Maintenance

---

## INTRODUCTION

Owners are responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is regularly serviced at the correct distance/time intervals as specified in the Maintenance Schedules.

The condition of the tires is of the utmost importance. Advice about tire wear and correct usage is given 'TIRE CARE', page 204. If in any doubt about the condition of your tires, contact a Jaguar Dealer.

## REGULAR SERVICING

Each vehicle is given a full Pre-Delivery Inspection to ensure that all systems function correctly and the vehicle meets its specification.

Regular maintenance and servicing is the responsibility of the owner. Failure to implement maintenance at the recommended intervals could result in deterioration of vehicle performance and possible infringement of regulations.

Your Jaguar Dealer will be pleased to arrange periodic servicing in accordance with the Passport to Service book (USA and Canada) or Service Portfolio book (Mexico).

### Battery/ignition isolator switches

Non-approved battery isolator switches, which disconnect the power supply to all electrical circuits, are not recommended.

## USED ENGINE OIL



### WARNING:

**Prolonged and repeated contact may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer.**

Always use a hand cream to protect the skin from oil contamination. Avoid contact with the skin as far as possible and wash thoroughly after any contact. Keep oils out of reach of children.

## PROTECT THE ENVIRONMENT

Care should be taken at all times to avoid polluting the environment. Used materials, e.g. batteries, tires, fluids and filters, should be disposed of at suitable disposal facilities in accordance with local legislation. If in doubt, clarification should be sought from your local authority/regulator.

### Engine and throttle settings

Do not attempt to make adjustments to the engine or throttle settings. Many vehicle systems are controlled by complex electronic devices and require specialist knowledge. Such work should be entrusted to a Jaguar Dealer.

### Hydraulic fluid



### WARNING:

**Contamination of the brake system fluid by as little as 1 per cent will cause rapid deterioration of the system seals. Ensure that the brake fluid reservoir cap is securely fitted.**

The brake hydraulic fluid in the master cylinder and brake operating system uses Shell DOT4 ESL or a low viscosity DOT 4 brake fluid that meets ISO 4925 class 6 requirements. ONLY FLUID OF THIS TYPE AND STANDARD MAY BE USED.

# HoodBonnet Release

---

## HOOD OPENING



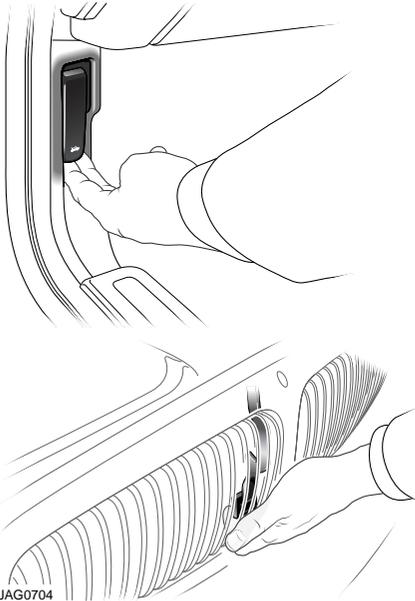
### WARNING:

Take care to keep away from rotating components if the engine is running when you open the hood.



### WARNING:

Before closing the hood ensure that no one is obstructing the closing area and that hands and clothes are clear. Remove tools, cleaning cloths, etc., from the engine compartment.



JAG0704

Release the hood lock by pulling the lever below the fascia on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Lift the hood slightly and pull up the safety catch under the hood, located centrally behind the grille. The gas filled struts will assist raising the hood, and retain it in the fully open position.

## HOOD CLOSING

Close the hood to within a distance of 25 to 30 cm (10 to 12 inches) of the fully closed position, then let go to allow the hood to shut. Check by pulling the hood that both the right-hand and left-hand latches are engaged.

# Regular Checks

---

## CHECK INTERVALS

In the interests of safety and reliability, it is advisable to carry out the following checks at the recommended intervals, and always before starting on a long journey.

### Daily

Check that there is sufficient fuel for the journey intended, particularly at night and before entering motorways.

### Weekly

**Tires** - Check the tires, including the spare, for condition and pressure.

**Lights** - Check that all exterior lights and direction indicators function correctly and that the lenses are clean.

**Engine oil** - With the vehicle standing on level ground, check the oil level and replenish if necessary with oil of the correct grade.

**Engine coolant** - With the engine cold, check the level of the coolant in the coolant reservoir header tank. Any loss of fluid must be checked by a Jaguar Dealer.

**Brake/clutch fluid** - Check the level of the fluid in the brake fluid reservoir. Replenish if necessary with new, unused Jaguar approved brake fluid.

The reservoir is initially nearly full, but the level will drop as the brake pads wear. If the level appears unusually low, location of the fluid leakage must be checked by a Jaguar Dealer.

**Power steering fluid** - With the engine cold check the level of the fluid in the power steering fluid reservoir. Replenish if necessary with fluid of the correct specification. Any loss of fluid should be checked by a Jaguar Dealer.

### Monthly

**Windshield washer fluid** - Replenish with recommended windshield washer fluid and clean soft water. Check the operation of the washer. Use Jaguar Windshield Washer Fluid to keep the glass clean and also to prevent the fluid from freezing during cold weather.

**Wiper blades** - Check the quality of the wipe. If smearing or juddering is evident, clean the windshield and renew the wiper blades.

### Drivetrain lubricants

The rear axle (final drive unit), transfer box and automatic transmission unit (gearbox) will not normally require to be checked or replenished.

## ENGINE OIL CONSUMPTION

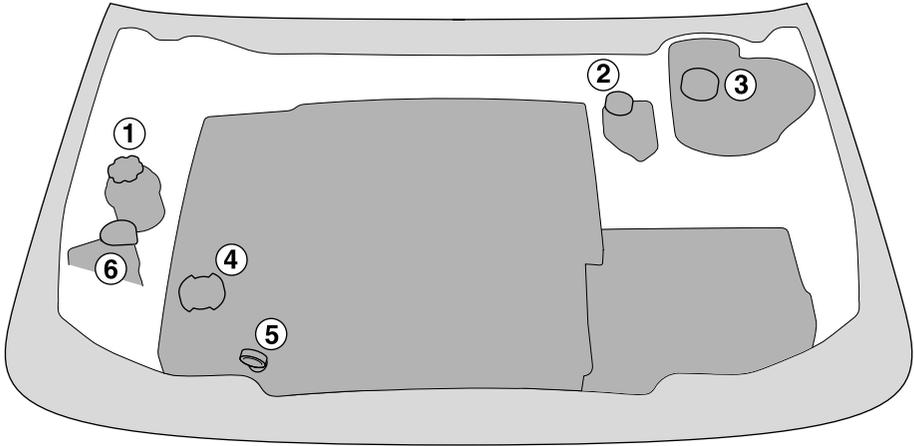
A certain amount of oil consumption is normal. The rate of consumption will depend on the following:

- The quality and viscosity of the oil.
- The amount of oxidation and dilution of the oil.
- Climatic conditions.
- The speed at which the engine is being operated.
- Road conditions.

Drivers should expect above normal consumption when the engine is new, and after running-in if high speeds are sustained.

# Regular Checks

## RESERVOIR AND DIPSTICK LOCATIONS



JAG0832

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Brake reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Engine oil filler.
5. Engine oil dipstick.
6. Windshield washer reservoir (blue top).

Capacities	US Quarts	Litres
Engine oil change including new oil filter	6.1	5.8
Windshield washer reservoir	4.4	4.2

# Checking and Top-up

## CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL

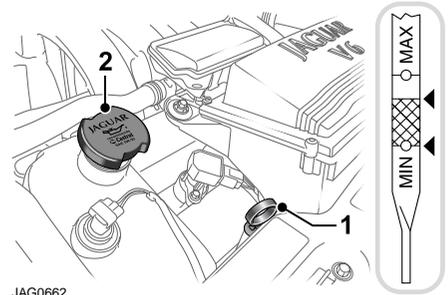
The oil consumption of your engine is influenced by many factors: new engines reach the normal value only after approximately 3 000 miles (5 000 km).

Check the oil level regularly with the vehicle on flat, level ground. See “RESERVOIR AND DIPSTICK LOCATIONS” on page 186.

It is preferable to check the oil level after the vehicle has been standing, that is, with the engine completely cold.

If the engine has been started do not check the oil level until the engine has reached normal operating temperature. Stop the engine and wait for a minimum of 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump.

## Procedure



JAG0662

Remove the dipstick **1** and wipe clean with a non-fluffy cloth. Replace fully, then withdraw the dipstick. If the oil level is above the minimum mark on the dipstick then no additional oil is required.

If the oil level reaches the minimum level, remove the oil filler cap **2** and add oil, to the quantity and specification shown: refer to Recommended Engine Oil.

Refit the filler cap and securely tighten it by hand.

**Caution: Do not use oil additives of any type. Use only specified lubricants.**

# Checking and Top-up

## RECOMMENDED ENGINE OIL

Jaguar recommends 



When the oil level is at the lower dipstick mark, add 1 quart (1 litre) of oil.

**Oil specification - API SL/EC and ILSAC GF-3**

When topping up between oil changes, make sure that you use oil that has the correct quality level (API service) and viscosity grade.

**Caution: Your vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by use of improper engine oil. Failure to use an oil that meets specification API SL/EC and ILSAC GF-3 may cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.**

**Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines.**

**SAE Viscosity Rating** - For climates ranging from -30°C (-22°F) to +50°C (+122°F), the following oil viscosities may be used:

0W-30

5W-30 (preferred)

0W-40

5W-40

**Note:** For maximum fuel economy, 5W-30 oil is recommended.

*It is recommended that the oil level is topped up using oil of the same viscosity. If you are unsure which oil viscosity is used in your car, your Jaguar Dealer will be able to advise.*

If you are operating this vehicle in climates outside the above temperature range, contact your Jaguar Dealer for advice.

## Used engine oil



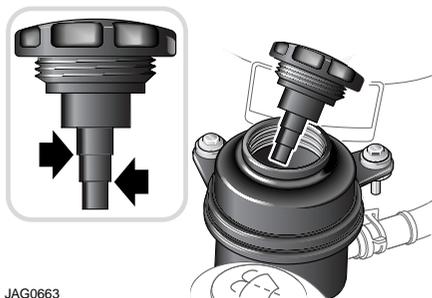
### WARNING:

**Prolonged and repeated contact may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer.**

Always use a hand cream to protect the skin from oil contamination. Avoid contact with the skin as far as possible and wash thoroughly after any contact. Keep oils out of reach of children.

# Checking and Top-up

## POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL



JAG0663

**Caution:** It is imperative that the power steering system does not become contaminated in any way. Always dispense fluid from a fresh sealed container and clean the area around the reservoir neck both before and after replenishment. Never return drained fluid to the system.

See “RESERVOIR AND DIPSTICK LOCATIONS” on page 186.

Check the fluid level when the engine is COLD and the vehicle is on a flat, level surface.

Wipe clean and remove the filler cap from the reservoir; take great care to prevent any foreign matter from entering.

Check that the fluid level is between the marks on the dipstick.

If necessary, replenish with power steering fluid to specification **Dexron III**, DO NOT OVERFILL.

Refit the filler cap.

Should the level be very low, report the loss of fluid to the nearest Jaguar Dealer.

 **WARNING:**

Do not allow power steering fluid to make contact with skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected area immediately with plenty of water.

 **WARNING:**

Power steering fluid is toxic and flammable. Be sure to observe all warnings indicated on the power steering fluid container.

 **WARNING:**

Power steering fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

 **WARNING:**

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

**Caution:** The engine must not be started if the fluid level has dropped below the MIN mark. Severe damage to the steering pump could result.

**Caution:** Seek qualified assistance immediately if there is a noticeable drop in the fluid level. Severe damage to the steering pump could result.

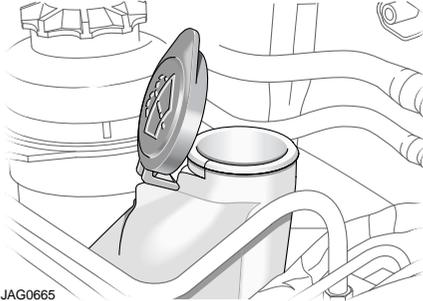
**Caution:** Power steering fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

**Caution:** Do not fill the reservoir above the MAX mark.



# Checking and Top-up

## WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID



JAG0665

See “RESERVOIR AND DIPSTICK LOCATIONS” on page 186.

The washer reservoir contains the fluid for the windshield washers and the headlight powerwash system.

Fill to just below the neck with Jaguar Windshield Washer Fluid diluted with clean, preferably soft water as specified in the instructions on the bottle.

Do not overfill.

**Note:** *Using a non-approved fluid may adversely affect the wiper blade rubber, resulting in ineffectual and noisy wiping.*

## Cold weather precautions



**WARNING:**  
Windscreen washer fluid is toxic and in concentrated form is flammable. Be sure to observe all warnings indicated on the washer solution container.

To prevent damage to the pump during freezing conditions, use Jaguar Windshield Washer Fluid at the strength shown on the bottle, for the anticipated ambient temperature.

**Caution:** Under no circumstances must cooling system anti-freeze be used, since this will damage the paintwork.

**Caution:** State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol anti-freeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle’s paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

# Checking and Top-up

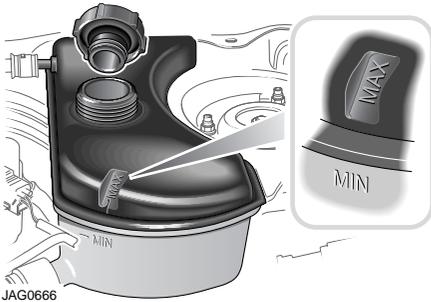
## COOLANT LEVEL



### WARNING:

Do not remove the coolant header tank filler/pressure cap while the engine is hot. If the cap must be removed, protect the hands against escaping steam and slowly turn the cap counterclockwise until the steam pressure starts to escape. Leave the cap in this position until the pressure is released, and then remove the cap completely.

**Caution:** Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.



The coolant level must only be checked when the engine is COLD.

See “RESERVOIR AND DIPSTICK LOCATIONS” on page 186.

The coolant level should be between the two marks located on the side of the header tank. If persistent coolant loss is noticed, report this to a Jaguar Dealer to have the cause investigated at the earliest opportunity.

## Top-up



### WARNING:

Never remove the filler cap when the engine is hot - escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.



### WARNING:

Avoid spilling antifreeze onto a hot engine - a fire may result.



### WARNING:

Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.



### WARNING:

Do not allow antifreeze to make contact with skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected area immediately with plenty of water.

**Caution:** When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always ensure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

**Caution:** Anti-freeze will damage paintwork. Avoid spillage.

Replenish with the correct strength anti-freeze and water (50% mix each, of water and anti-freeze), until the coolant is within the MAX and MIN marks on the header tank.

Refit the filler cap and securely tighten it by hand until the ratchet operates.

# Checking and Top-up

---

## ENGINE ANTI-FREEZE



### WARNING:

**Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**



### WARNING:

**If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.**

**Caution: The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine cooling system and therefore engine durability.**

**Caution: Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces; soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.**

Anti-freeze, when used at the correct concentration, not only protects the engine from frost damage in winter, it also provides all year round protection against internal corrosion.

The cooling system should be filled or replenished with a mixture of 50 per cent water and 50 per cent anti-freeze, conforming to specification:

WSS M97B44, coloured orange,  
Extended Life Coolant.

This mixture gives frost protection for temperatures down to -40°C (-40°F).

Do not mix any other anti-freeze with that specified; inferior quality anti-freeze may be ineffective in maintaining adequate frost and corrosion protection to the cooling system.

The coolant solution may remain in the cooling system for five years or 156 000 miles (250 000 km) after which the system should be drained, flushed and refilled.

### Engine block heater

For further information consult your Jaguar Dealer.

**Caution: The fitting of an engine block heater does not eliminate the need for anti-freeze under freezing conditions.**

# Battery

## BATTERY WARNING SIGNS

There is a label on the battery depicting a number of warning signs. The warning signs are as follows:



No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks (Red)



Keep away from children (Red)



Shield eyes (Blue)



Battery acid (Yellow)



Explosive gas (Yellow)

## BATTERY CARE



### WARNING:

Do not connect any 12 volt equipment, (for example, a 12 volt lead lamp), directly to the battery terminals. Use the cigar lighter sockets for temporarily connecting Jaguar approved accessories.



### WARNING:

The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is in the vehicle. Failure to fit, or incorrect fitting of these items is potentially hazardous.



### WARNING:

To avoid injury do not use an open flame or cause an electric spark when checking the battery. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is flammable and may explode.



### WARNING:

Do not let battery acid electrolyte come into contact with skin or eyes. If you get any in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water and consult a doctor.



### WARNING:

Never charge or boost a frozen battery.



### WARNING:

Switch off ignition before disconnecting battery terminals. Always disconnect the ground terminal first and reconnect last.



### WARNING:

California Proposition 65:  
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

# Battery

---

A low maintenance battery specifically designed for use with this vehicle is fitted in the engine compartment.

In hot climates more frequent checks of the battery electrolyte level are required. If necessary, the battery cells can be topped up with distilled water.

**Caution: Do not let battery acid come into contact with painted surfaces or fabric.**

The exterior of the battery should be occasionally wiped clean to remove any dirt or grease.

If a new battery is to be fitted, it must be the same type as the original.

The use of unapproved batteries is not recommended and could invalidate the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** *The service life of the battery is dependent on its condition of charge. It must always be sufficiently charged for the battery to last an optimum length of time.*

We recommend that the battery charge is checked frequently if the vehicle is used mostly for short distance trips, or if it is not used for long periods of time.

## GENERATOR

To prevent damage to the generator, do not run the engine while the battery or any of the charging circuit cables are disconnected.

The generator has polarity-sensitive components that may be irreparably damaged if subjected to incorrect polarity. Ensure that the battery ground lead is always connected to the battery negative terminal.

## BATTERY CHARGING



### WARNING:

**Batteries produce combustible gas (hydrogen) when being charged. The battery must be removed from the vehicle before charging commences.**

To disconnect the battery, refer to Battery lead disconnection below.

When charging the battery ensure that the charge voltage is the same as the nominal voltage of the battery.

Switch off the charger before connecting or disconnecting terminal connections to avoid sparks and short circuits.

Ensure that the charger positive (+) lead is connected to the positive (+) terminal of the battery and the negative (-) lead is connected to the negative (-) terminal of the battery.

Do not remove or loosen any of the cell plugs when charging the battery.

Check, and if necessary replenish, the electrolyte level when the battery is fully charged.

### Battery lead disconnection

#### Note:

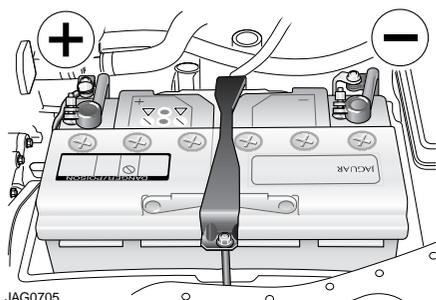
- *Upon battery lead reconnection the radio security code will be required and the clock will need to be reset.*
- *Electrically operated door windows must be reset to learn the anti-trap function.*
- *If the battery is disconnected for more than 72 hours the radio preset channels will need to be reset upon battery reconnection.*

# Battery

- *The trip computer will lose all recorded trip data and all trip functions will be reset to zero. The vehicle total odometer reading is retained.*

**Caution: Under no circumstances should a battery be disconnected whilst the ignition circuit is live, as permanent damage to the instrument panel may occur.**

**Caution: Disconnect the negative lead (ground terminal) first.**



JAG0705

Open the hood and unclip the battery box cover. Remove the positive terminal cover.

Slacken the negative lead pinch bolt and disconnect the negative (-) battery lead. Slacken the positive lead pinch bolt and disconnect the positive (+) battery lead.

Clean the battery posts and coat the post bases with petroleum jelly.

## Battery lead connection

Make sure the battery is replaced in the centre of the battery tray when refitting and that the clamping bar is also placed centrally.

**Note:** Upon battery reconnection the security system will be armed. Opening any protected entry will sound the alarm. Make sure that a key or key transmitter is available.

**Caution: Do not overtighten the pinch bolts.**

Connect the positive (+) lead, tighten the pinch bolt and clip the positive terminal cover on the battery. Connect the negative (-) lead and tighten the pinch bolt.

After the battery has been reconnected and the ignition switch is turned to position II, the message centre display will initially show an erroneous reading i.e. - - - - -. This will remain until after the bulb check sequence, when the correct recorded mileage will be displayed. This is a normal function of the instrument panel.

**Note:** When the battery is disconnected and reconnected, some abnormal drive symptoms may occur while the vehicle relearns its adaptive strategy. The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 kilometres) or more to relearn the strategy.

Reset the clock to the correct time.

The radio will not operate until the correct security code has been re-entered. Refer to the audio systems handbook.

Reset the window anti-trap feature.

# Wiper Blades

---

## CLEANING THE WINDSHIELD

Use Jaguar Screen Clean Paste to remove contamination from the windshield to ensure effective wiping or if smearing or juddering becomes evident. A more aggressive cleaning agent may be required to remove stubborn contamination. Contact a Jaguar Dealer for advice.

To ensure that the windshield remains smear-free, the washer system should be operated whenever the wipers are used, even when it is raining.

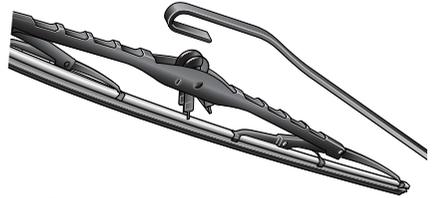
## WIPER BLADE CLEANING

Lift the wiper blades clear of the windshield and wipe the blades with a clean, soft cloth moistened with water to which a mild liquid detergent has been added.

Inspect the wiper blades, and if there are any signs of wear or damage, renew the blades.

Renew the wiper blades before and after each winter, or more often if required.

## WIPER BLADE RENEWAL



JAG0706

Move the wiper arm away from the windshield, squeeze the retaining clip and withdraw the wiper blade from the arm. After fitting the new blade, check that it is held firmly in position. Reposition the wiper arm and blade onto the windshield.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Two windshield washer nozzles are mounted on the hood. Each nozzle directs two spray patterns to the windshield.

**Note:** *The windshield wiper jets and headlight washer jets are not adjustable.*

# Vehicle Care

---

## INTERIOR CARE

Brush and clean the interior regularly. Use a vacuum cleaner where possible to remove all dust from the interior and trim.

A valet kit containing a selection of Car Care products is available from the Jaguar accessory range.

**Caution: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel, to avoid contamination of the air bag system**

**Caution: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the seat-mounted side air bag. Such products could contaminate the side air bag system and affect the performance of the side air bag in a collision.**

### Carpets

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used. See your Jaguar Dealer for advice.

### Headlining

Remove dust in the headlining with a vacuum cleaner. To remove stains, dab gently without pressing, using a fluff-free white cloth, moistened with Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner.

Do not use methylated spirit or solvents as this may cause damage or discoloration to the headlining.

### Leather upholstery

For information about the care and maintenance of leather upholstery. See "LEATHER CARE GUIDE" on page 37.

### Cloth upholstery

Weekly light vacuuming can extend the life of the fabric.

Using Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, following the instructions, will preserve and enhance cloth upholstery. Test the upholstery cleaner solution on an unseen part of the seat. Do not over wet.

#### Caution:

- **Never use soap, ammonia, bleach or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.**
- **Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as facia switches.**

### Removing stains



#### WARNING:

**Dry cleaning fluids may be toxic or flammable. Take adequate precautions when handling these products.**

Most stains on woollen fabric can be removed if treatment is carried out immediately, before the stain has a chance to dry-in.

Keep the necessary cleaning materials in a convenient place.

Most stains can be treated with one of three cleaning fluids: Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, dry cleaning fluid or clean water.

# Vehicle Care

---

Mop up excess liquid with absorbent tissue (preferably white) or absorbent cloth; scoop up dry solids. Work inwards from the edge of the stain to prevent spreading. Use small amounts of cleaning liquid, blotting between applications.

Work slowly and thoroughly using light pressure. If the stain cannot be removed, contact a reputable dry cleaners.

## EXTERIOR CARE

**Note:** *All the cleaning materials mentioned in this section are available from the Jaguar Accessory Range.*

### Washing

For best results, do not wash the vehicle under strong sunlight. Always allow the vehicle to cool down before washing.

Do not use a dry cloth to wipe dirty paintwork. Dust and gritty substances are abrasive and will scratch the paintwork. Remove dirt using a cellulose sponge and plenty of warm (never hot) water. Rinse off with clean water and dry using a clean, damp chamois leather.

Do not use household soaps or detergents. The use of Jaguar Vehicle Shampoo is recommended.

Do not direct hoses at full force around door and luggage compartment seals. Using high pressure water jets on the paintwork is not recommended.

Do not allow bird droppings or tree sap to harden. Remove from paintwork immediately with a lukewarm soap and water solution.

In winter, when salt is used on the roads, wash the vehicle frequently, and immediately after encountering such conditions. Clean undersides and wheel arches using a high pressure jet.

### Automatic car wash

**Note:** *Regular use of automatic car washes tends to dull the lustre of the paintwork.*

After leaving the car wash, switch on the windshield wipers immediately to remove water and prevent a build up of wax. Jaguar Screen Clean Paste can be used to clean any residual wax from the glass.

### Removing grease or tar

Remove grease or tar with Jaguar Tar Remover or methylated spirit (alcohol). White spirit is also effective, but must not be applied to rubber, particularly the windshield wiper blades.

### Glass surfaces

To avoid scratching glass surfaces, do not clean dirty glass with dry paper or cloth. Use clean, warm water and a chamois leather which is reserved for glass only.

The following products will ensure glass surfaces and windshield wipers are kept in good condition:

Jaguar Screen Clean Paste - Apply to the exterior of the windshield only to ensure effective operation of the windshield wiper.

Jaguar Glass Cleaner - Interior and exterior of all other glass surfaces.

Jaguar Screen Wash - Washer reservoir additive.

Jaguar Winter Care Kit comprising de-icer, ice scraper, anti-mist wipe cloth and aerial cleaner - for use in adverse weather conditions.

# Vehicle Care

---

## **Note:**

- *Renew the wiper blades when worn to prevent scratching. Clean the rubber wiper blades regularly with a mild detergent solution.*
- *It is advisable to clean the windshield with Jaguar Screen Clean Paste at regular intervals.*

## **Cleaning the rear windshield**

To avoid damaging the heating and radio elements when cleaning the inside of the rear windshield use only a soft damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

## **Polishing paintwork and brightwork**

For maximum protection against road dust, salts, industrial fall-out etc., it is recommended that the vehicle is polished regularly using Jaguar Polish and a Polishing Cloth.

***Note:** The vehicle's brightwork should be cleaned in the same way as the paintwork: chrome polish and other abrasive cleaners must not be used.*

## **Paint chips**

Scratches and chips should be touched in before weathering action begins. Inspect the paintwork immediately after the vehicle has been washed.

## **Underhood cleaning**

Underhood cleaning using high pressure hoses or steam cleaners should be done by a Jaguar Dealer.

Indiscriminate use of cleaning equipment could damage or contaminate the electronic control modules and fuse boxes.

## **CARE OF ALLOY ROAD WHEELS**

The alloy road wheels are covered with a protective anti-corrosion coating. To prevent corrosion it is essential that this coating is not damaged.

When removing or fitting tires always advise the tire fitter to treat the alloy wheels with great care and to only use equipment with spigot or stud hole clamping. The equipment must not have any moving parts which contact the wheel, and tire levers must not be used.

Wash the wheels with soap and water at two week intervals to avoid an accumulation of particles which could become embedded in the wheel surface. In salty conditions the wheels should be cleaned weekly.

In compliance with German Road Traffic Law the size of the wheel rims is stamped or cast on all wheels.

# Electrical Accessories

## USE OF ACCESSORIES



### WARNING:

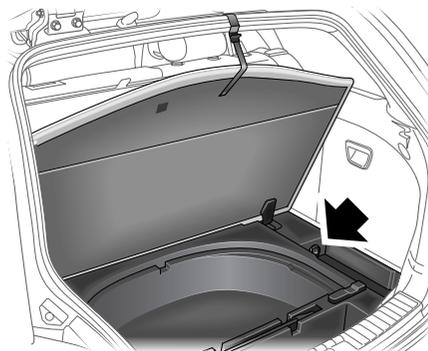
Alterations to the electrical system, including the fitting of accessories not designed for this Jaguar, will cause damage to the electrical circuits and systems. In some circumstances this could result in a malfunction or fire. All accessory work should be entrusted to a Jaguar Dealer.

The cigar lighter sockets can be used for plug-in accessories which are only temporarily connected to the vehicle (for example, a car vacuum cleaner).

### Caution:

- **Under no circumstances must the power supply be obtained directly from either battery terminal.**
- **The use of non-approved accessories can reduce the battery capacity and charge period to an unacceptable level, therefore, Jaguar cannot accept any liability for the fitment of any such item.**

## Wagon accessory socket



JAG0710

A 12-volt accessory socket is provided in the underfloor storage tray. The socket must only be used to power accessories that are temporarily connected to the vehicle.

The tray is designed to allow a cable to run from the socket to the tray's main storage area. For example, a laptop computer placed in the tray can be charged whilst hidden from view.

**Note:** *The accessory socket is not powered when the ignition is switched OFF.*

### Ground points

If an accessory needs to be connected to a ground point, consult a Jaguar Dealer.

**Caution:** **Under no circumstances must holes be drilled in the bodywork to accept ground terminals.**



# Tires

## Speed rating, 7

The speed rating, when stated, denotes the maximum speed at which the tire should be used for extended periods. The ratings range from 99 mph to 186 mph and are listed in the following table.

Rating	Speed (mph)
Q	99
R	106
S	112
T	118
U	124
H	130
V	149
W	168
Y	186

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN), 8

This begins with the letters **DOT** and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code where the tire was manufactured. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was **3105**, the tire was made in the 31st week of 2005. The other codes numbers are marketing codes used at the manufacturer's discretion. This information can be used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## Mud and snow, 9

**M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tire has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.

## Tire ply composition and materials, 10

The number of plies in both the tread area, and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber coated material make up the structure of the tire. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.

## Treadwear grade, 11

This number indicates the tire's wear rate. The higher the treadwear number is, the longer it should take for the tread to wear down. A tire rated at 400 for example, will last twice as long as a tire rated at 200.

## Traction grade, 12

This letter indicates a tire's ability to stop on wet pavement. A higher graded tire should allow you to stop your car on wet roads in a shorter distance than a tire with a lower grade. Traction is graded from highest to lowest as **AA**, **A**, **B**, and **C**.

## Maximum load rating, 13

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

## Temperature grade, 14

Heat resistance grading. The tires resistance to heat is graded **A**, **B**, or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. This grading is provided for a correctly inflated tire, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.

## Maximum permissible inflation pressure, 15

The maximum inflation pressure for the tire. This pressure should not be used for normal driving.

# Tires

## TIRE INFORMATION

Tires of the correct type, manufacture and dimensions, with correct cold inflation pressures are an integral part of every vehicle's design. Regular maintenance of tires contributes not only to safety, but to the designed function of the vehicle. Road-holding, steering and braking are especially vulnerable to incorrectly pressurised, badly fitted or worn tires.

Tires of the correct size and type, but of different makes, have widely varying characteristics. It is therefore recommended that only Jaguar approved tires are fitted to all wheels.



### WARNING:

- **Always ensure replacement tires have the correct rating and specifications (e.g. load index, size, speed rating) for your vehicle. Contact your Jaguar Dealer for more information.**
- **When using tires other than those recommended by Jaguar, do not exceed the speed capacity recommended by the manufacturer.**

## TIRE CARE

In the interests of safety and reliability, it is advisable to check the tires, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis. See "Checking tire pressures" on page 207.

### Wear



All tires fitted as original equipment include tread wear indicators (TWI) in their tread pattern. When the tread has worn to a remaining depth of 1.6 mm the indicators appear at the surface as bars which connect the tread pattern across the full width of the tire.

It is illegal, in certain countries, to continue to use tires after the tread has worn to less than 1.6 mm over three quarters of the width and the entire circumference of the tire.

It should be noted that the properties of many tires alter progressively with wear. In particular the wet grip and aquaplaning resistance are gradually but substantially reduced. Extra care and speed restriction should therefore be exercised on wet roads as the effective tread depth diminishes.

Incorrect wheel alignment will accelerate tire wear. Fins on the inner or outer edges of the tread pattern are caused by excessive toe-in or toe-out respectively. As fins may also be caused by high cornering speeds or road camber, it is advantageous to have the cause detected by having the wheel alignment checked.

# Tires

---

## Tire repair

It is recommended that damaged tires are discarded and new tires fitted. They must not be repaired in view of the high performance capability of the vehicle.

## Damage

Excessive local distortion can cause the casing of a tire to fracture and may lead to premature failure. Tires should be examined especially for cracked walls, exposed cords, etc. Flints and other sharp objects must be removed from the tire tread; if left in they may work through the cover. Clean off any oil or grease contamination by using a suitable cleaner.

**Caution: Do not use paraffin (kerosene), because this has a detrimental effect on rubber.**

## Tire use after vehicle storage

After a long period of a vehicle standing, tires may become locally distorted with a flat area. This will cause an uneven ride for a few miles until the tires have warmed up and the flat rounds off.

However, to reduce the effects of flat-spots, the tires of a stored vehicle may be inflated to pressures not exceeding 420 kPa (60 psi).

## Tire ageing

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced after six years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the ageing process.

You should replace the spare tire when you replace the other road tires due to the ageing of the spare tire.

## TIRE PRESSURES



### WARNING:

- **If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce tire pressures; instead, move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tires to cool before checking.**
- **Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven wear to the tire. This can lead to sudden tire failure.**
- **Over-inflation causes a harsh ride, uneven tire wear and poor handling.**
- **A hot tire at or below the recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.**

Correctly inflated tires will ensure that you enjoy the best combination of tire life, ride comfort, fuel economy and road handling.

Under-inflated tires wear more rapidly, can seriously affect the vehicle's road handling characteristics and fuel consumption, as well as increasing the risk of tire failure. Over-inflated tires give a harsher ride, wear unevenly and are more prone to damage.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

# Tires

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Check the pressures (including the spare wheel) when the tires are cold - be aware that it only takes 1.5 km (1 mile) of driving to warm up the tires sufficiently to affect the tire pressures.

Air pressure naturally increases in warm tires; if it is necessary to check the tires when they are warm (after the vehicle has been driven for a while), you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 30 - 40 kPa (4 - 6 psi). In this circumstance, Do not let air out of the tires in order to match the recommended cold tire pressures.

## Recommended tire pressures

The following table gives the tire pressures for all recommended tire sizes.

Tire Size	Tire Pressure	
	Front	Rear
205/55 R16	260 kPa (38 psi)	240 kPa (35 psi)
225/45 R17	260 kPa (38 psi)	240 kPa (35 psi)
225/40 R18	280 kPa (40 psi)	240 kPa (35 psi)
Space-saver spare wheel (front or rear)		420 kPa (60 psi)

# Tires

## Checking tire pressures



### WARNING:

**Tire pressures should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge when cold. Failure to properly maintain your pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, with consequential loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tire pressures:

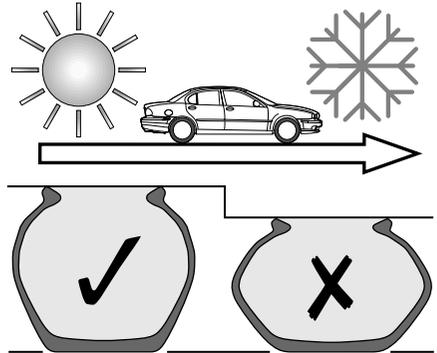
1. Remove the valve cover.
2. Firmly attach a tire pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tire pressure from the gauge. If required, add air to the tire.
4. If air is added to the tire, remove the gauge from the valve and reattach it before checking that the pressure is correct. Failure to remove and reattach the gauge from the valve could cause the gauge to show an incorrect reading.
5. If too much air is added, remove the gauge from the valve and allow air out of the tire by pressing the centre of the valve. Reconnect the gauge to the valve, and check that the air pressure is correct.
6. Refit the valve cover.

A slight natural pressure loss occurs with time. If this exceeds 14 kPa (2 psi) per week, the cause should be investigated and rectified.

**Note:** *It is an offence in certain countries to drive a vehicle with tires that are not inflated in accordance with the vehicle's proper use.*

## Ambient temperature pressure compensation

If the intended journey will take the vehicle into an area where the ambient local temperature is known to be lower than the journey start point, tire pressure under inflation could occur.



JAG0707

A colder ambient local temperature will reduce pressure within the tire. An effect is to decrease sidewall height and to increase tire shoulder wear with the potential for tire failure. Vehicle dynamics could also be adversely affected.

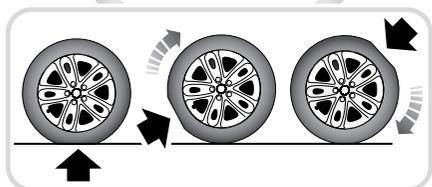
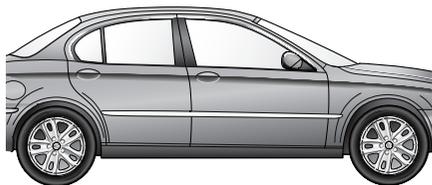
In order to minimise this effect, tire pressures can be adjusted to compensate before the start of the journey. Alternatively, tire pressures can be adjusted when the area of lower ambient temperature is reached.

In this situation the vehicle must be left in the ambient local temperature for a least one hour before tire pressure is adjusted. To compensate for colder ambient temperatures, tire pressures should be increased by 14 kPa (2 psi) for each 10°C (20°F) decrease.

# Tires

**Note:** Ensure that correct tire pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature.

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tires can be affected by a softening of the tire side wall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tire at the point where the tire meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.



JAG0708

This is normal tire behaviour, however, when the vehicle is subsequently driven vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition will steadily improve with additional mileage.

In order to minimise this effect, tire pressures can be adjusted to compensate.

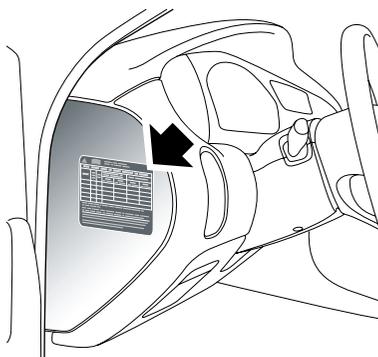
For each 10°C (20°F) increase in temperature above 20°C (68°F), tire pressure should be increased by 14 kPa (2 psi).

## Tire pressure compensation chart - high ambient temperatures

Ambient Temperature °C (°F)	Pressure Compensation kPa (psi)
20 (68)	use placard label
30 (86)	+14 (2)
40 (104)	+28 (4)
50 (122)	+41 (6)

## TIRE INFORMATION LABELS

Tire pressure label  
(Canada and Mexico only)

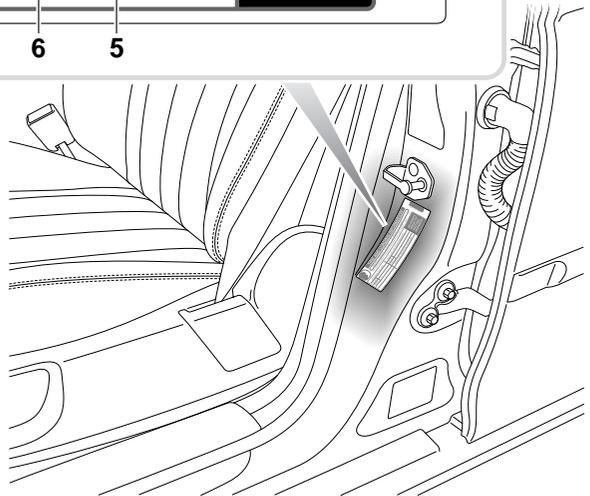
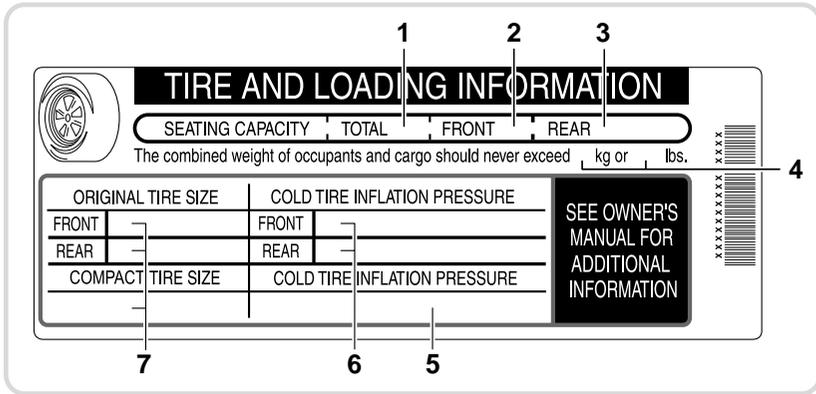


JAG0829

A tire recommendation label is visible on the end of the fascia on the driver's side of the vehicle, giving information specific to the vehicle's wheel and tire equipment.

# Tires

## Tire pressure label/placard (USA only)



JAG0831

A tire information label is visible on the pillar behind the driver's door (also known as the B pillar), giving information specific to the wheel and tire equipment fitted to the vehicle when it was built. The label contains the following information:

- The maximum number of occupants 1, divided between the front 2 and rear 3 of the vehicle.

- The vehicle capacity weight 4, which includes the weight of the driver, passengers and cargo.
- Cold inflation pressures for the spare tire 5 and the front and rear tires 6.
- The size of the tires 7 with which the vehicle was originally equipped.

**Note:** The label must not be changed, even if different wheels are fitted at a later stage.

# Tires

## Steps for determining correct load limit (USA only)



### WARNING:

**Do not exceed the vehicle capacity weight (the total weight of driver, passengers and cargo) given on the tire information label. See “Tire pressure label/placard (USA only)” on page 209.**

1. Locate the statement: “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs on your vehicle’s placard”. See “Tire pressure label/placard (USA only)” on page 209.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs (weight given on placard).
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs, and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs:  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs})$ .
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this handbook to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (Subtract the trailer nose load from the available cargo and luggage load capacity.) See “Load Weights” on page 224.

The number and weight of passengers will affect the cargo and luggage load capacity. In the example above, the cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. However, if fewer passengers ride in the vehicle, the luggage load capacity will increase. If this vehicle carries three 150 lb passengers, the cargo and luggage load capacity will increase to 950 lbs:  $(1400 - 450 (3 \times 150) = 950 \text{ lbs})$ .

If the passengers weigh more, the cargo and luggage load capacity will decrease.



### WARNING:

- **The weight of accessories must also be subtracted from the available cargo and luggage load capacity. If you are unsure of the weight of any accessories fitted to your vehicle, contact your Jaguar Dealer.**
- **Overloading the vehicle will have an adverse affect on braking and handling characteristics, which could compromise your safety. Overloading a vehicle may also cause tire damage or failure. Never overload your vehicle.**

# Tires

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)



### WARNING:

- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. The TPMS only provides a low tire pressure warning and does not re-inflate the tires.
- The TPMS cannot register damage to a tire. Regularly check the condition of your tires, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road.

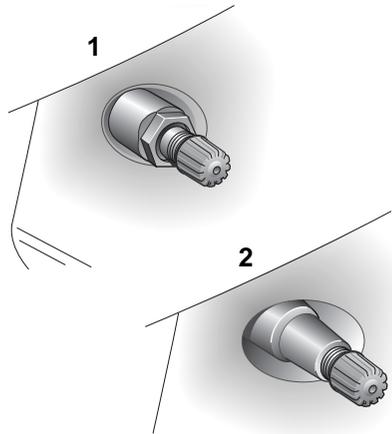
**Caution:** When inflating tires, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always ensure correct alignment of the inflation head to the valve stem

**Note:** Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs, TIRE PRESSURE SYSTEM FAULT will be displayed in the message centre.

**Note:** Different types of tire may affect the performance of the TPMS. Always replace tires in accordance with recommendations.

Your vehicle has been equipped with a TPMS which monitors pressure in each tire, including the full-size spare tire. temporary spare tires are not fitted with sensors and are consequently not monitored.

**Note:** The TPMS only provides a low tire pressure warning and does not re-inflate the tires.



E91713

Wheels fitted with a TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve 1. All Jaguar non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted 2.

### TPMS operation

The TPMS monitors the pressure of the tires via sensors located in each wheel and a receiver located within the vehicle. Communication between sensor and receiver is via Radio Frequency (RF) signals.



The TPMS comprises of an amber warning indicator (telltale) within the instrument pack and an associated message within the message centre..

If the telltale light illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure. If low pressure warnings occur frequently, the cause must be determined and rectified.

# Tires

---

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

When driving through variable climatic conditions, the TPMS warnings may be intermittent.

## **TPMS malfunction**

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

A text message will accompany the system malfunction and will display **TIRE PRESSURE SYSTEM FAULT**.

## **Temporary spare wheel and tire change**

If the temporary spare wheel is fitted, the system will automatically recognise the change in wheel positions. After approximately ten minutes of driving above 18 mph (25 km/h), the message **TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT** will be displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning indicator.

The warning indicator will initially flash and will subsequently revert to continuous illumination. Extended use of the temporary spare wheel, will produce an additional text message **TIRE PRESSURE SYSTEM FAULT**.

This TPMS display sequence will be activated at every starter switch cycle until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a fully operational full size wheel and tire assembly.

Always replace the temporary spare wheel before having TPMS faults investigated. The fault may well be rectified with the fitment of a fully operational full size running tire in lieu of the temporary spare wheel assembly.

# Tires

---

## If a tire needs to be changed



### **WARNING:**

**Valve stem seal, washer, nut, valve core and cap should be replaced at every tire change.**

**The valve stem seal, washer and nut must be replaced if the valve retention nut is loosened. Sensor units and nuts must be refitted using the correct torque figures.**

**Sensors can be removed from the wheel by unscrewing the valve retention nut.**

Damage to the vehicle may result if these precautions are not taken.

We recommend that you should always have your tires serviced by a dealer or qualified technician. Every wheel and tire assembly with the exception of the temporary spare, is equipped with a tire pressure sensor connected to the tire valve stem.

In order to avoid damage to the sensor, the tires must be removed and refitted to the road wheel in a specified manner. Care must be taken to avoid contact between the bead of the tire and the sensor during removal and refitting of the tire, otherwise the sensor may become damaged and/or inoperable.

## **Replacement sensor fitment procedure**

Sensor replacement should be carried out by a Jaguar Dealer.

A replacement sensor must be fitted to a running wheel in order to be recognised by the TPMS. Recognition only occurs when the vehicle is driven above 25 km/h (18 mph) for approximately ten minutes.

Should the TPMS for any wheel not clear, even after ensuring correct inflation and driving for more than ten minutes above 25 km/h (18 mph), consult your Jaguar Dealer.

## **Type approval numbers**

The TPMS devices comply with part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The TPMS radio frequency approval numbers for the USA and Canada are:

**USA FCC ID:** KR5S120123, TX KR55WK47594, RX 5WK4887.

**Canada IC:** 267T-S120123, 267T-5WK47594, CAN2671032336A.

# Tires

## Messages

The following table lists the messages relating to tire pressure monitoring that could appear in the message centre. Market criteria mean that some messages will not apply to your vehicle and will therefore not appear.

Message	Meaning	What to do?
CHECK PRESSURE RH or LH FRONT or REAR TIRE	One or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.	You should as soon as is possible stop, check your tires and inflate them to the recommended pressure.
CHECK PRESSURE SPARE TIRE	Your spare tire is significantly under-inflated	You should inflate the spare tire to the recommended pressure.
TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT	You have a temporary spare tire fitted at the corresponding position.	You should limit your vehicle speed to 80kph (50mph) and as soon as is possible replace the temporary spare tire with a correctly inflated full size tire.
	The TPMS sensor at the corresponding position has become defective, an unapproved accessory is interfering with the TPMS or you have fitted a wheel and tire which does not have a sensor.	You should as soon as is possible seek Jaguar dealer assistance.
TIRE PRESSURE SYSTEM FAULT	You have fitted wheels and tires which do not have TPMS sensors.	You should as soon as is possible have TPMS sensors fitted to the wheels and tires.
	TPMS sensors have become defective, an unapproved accessory is interfering with the TPMS or a general fault has been detected in the TPMS.	You should as soon as is possible seek Jaguar dealer assistance.
TIRE PRESSURES LOW FOR SPEED	The tire pressures are not suitable for high speed driving.	You should reduce vehicle speed and inflate the tires to recommended pressures for high speed driving.

# Tires

## TIRE GRADING

### United States Department of Transportation/Uniform Tire Quality Grades

The following information relates to the tire grading system developed by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration which will grade tires by tread wear, traction and temperature performance.

**Note:** *Tires that have deep tread, and winter tires, are exempt from these marking requirements.*

Quality grades, where applicable, can be found on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200	Traction AA	Temperature A
------------------	----------------	------------------

In addition to the marking requirements, passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example; a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half times as well on a government test course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends on the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction



**The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking tests, and does not include; acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are; **AA, A, B, and C**. These grades represent a tire's ability to stop on a wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked **C** may have poor traction performance.

### Temperature



**The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure**

The temperature grades are **A** (the highest), **B**, and **C**, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade **C** corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109.

# Tires

---

Grades **B** and **A** represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## TIRE RENEWAL

When renewing tires, it is preferable to fit a complete vehicle set. If either front or rear tires only need to be renewed, new tires must be fitted, as axle sets, to replace worn ones.

After new tires have been fitted the wheels need to be dynamically balanced.

The radial ply tires specified are designed to meet the high-speed performance capability of this vehicle.

Do not fit tires with a different tread pattern, size or speed rating.

### Ultra High Performance Tires

**Caution: This vehicle is equipped with an Ultra High Performance (UHP) wheel and tire combination designed to give maximum dry road performance with consideration for aquaplaning resistance.**

**UHP tires have a performance enhancing soft tread compound. If driven aggressively they may suffer increased tread wear and a shorter life than can be expected from other tire types. This wheel and tire combination is more susceptible to damage from road hazards.**

**Do not use this combination for driving on snow or ice. High performance tires must be replaced with winter tires when weather conditions dictate.**

## TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL



### WARNING:

**Failure to comply with the following can be dangerous. When a temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, switch off dynamic stability control, drive with caution and replace with the specified wheel and tire assembly as soon as possible. Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel at one time. Temporary-use spare wheel maximum speed is 50 mph (80 km/h).**

See "TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL" on page 162.

# Tires

---

## RECOMMENDED TIRE FITMENT

The following chart details the tires recommended for use in Mexico.

<b>Tire size</b>	<b>Pattern</b>
225/45 R 17 91Y	Pirelli P Zero
225/45 R 17 94W	Continental Conti Sport Contact

**For all other countries refer to your local Dealer for specific tire fitment.**

# Tires

---

## WINTER (SNOW) TIRES

The tires fitted as original equipment are designed with a rubber compound, tread pattern and width specially suited for high speeds in normal road conditions, but they are less suitable during extremes of low temperatures, snow and ice. The use of winter tires will considerably improve the vehicle's handling during these conditions.

It is recommended that only Jaguar approved winter tires are used, as follows:

Pirelli 205/55R 16

or

Continental 205/55R 16

Pirelli 205/50R 17

Pirelli 225/45R 17

Tire directional indicators must be rotating in a clockwise direction when viewed from the right-hand side of the vehicle, and anti-clockwise when viewed from the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Do not exceed 120 mph (193 km/h) in US (or 130 mph, 210 km/h in other countries) when using Jaguar approved winter tires.

Winter tires must be used in vehicle sets, that is, fitted on all four wheels.

Ensure that winter tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures. See "Recommended tire pressures" on page 206.

If non-Jaguar approved winter tires are fitted, refer to the tire pressure information label, attached to the end of the dashboard on the driver's side of the vehicle (Canada and Mexico) or the pillar behind the driver's door (USA).

## SNOW CHAINS

Snow chains, of the recommended type, may only be fitted to 16 inch front wheels.

**Caution: Snow chains must not be fitted to 17 inch wheels or above.**

Contact your Jaguar Dealer for details and availability of approved snow chains.

The maximum speed when using snow chains is 30 mph (48 km/h).

Remove the snow chains immediately the roads are clear of snow.

Ensure the fitting instructions supplied with the snow chains are kept in a safe place, for example, with this literature pack.

**Note:** *Traction control or (if fitted) Dynamic Stability Control, **MUST** be switched **OFF** when using snow chains.*

# Tires

---

## TIRE GLOSSARY

### **Cold tire pressure:**

Pressure in a tire that has been driven for less than one mile or has been standing for three hours or more.

### **Maximum inflation pressure:**

Maximum air pressure, to which a cold tire may be inflated, this figure (in psi and kPa) is molded onto the sidewall of a tire.

### **Curb weight:**

The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, coolant and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine.

### **Accessory weight:**

The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

### **Production options weight:**

The combined weight of those installed production options weighing over 1.4 kg (3 lb) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levellers, roof rack, heavy duty battery and special trim.

### **Vehicle capacity weight:**

The rated cargo and luggage load plus 68.0 kg (150.0 lb) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

### **Maximum loaded vehicle weight:**

This is the sum of:

- Curb weight.
- Accessory weight.
- Vehicle capacity weight.
- Production options weight.

### **Rim:**

A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

The size of the wheel rims is stamped or cast on all wheels.

### **Bead:**

The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

# Cargo Weights

## PRODUCTION OPTIONS WEIGHTS

### (USA only)

This table lists the production options weights. To calculate the curbweight of your vehicle, add the weight of all production options, including optional alloy wheels and spare wheel, to the basic curbweight for your vehicle.

**Note:** *The table only lists optional equipment that weighs more than 1.4 kg (3 lb).*



### WARNING:

**Do not exceed the vehicle capacity weight (the total weight of driver, passengers and cargo) given on the tire information label. See “Tire pressure label/placard (USA only)” on page 209.**

See “Steps for determining correct load limit” on page 210.

	Weight	
	kg	lb
<b>Curbweight, no options fitted</b>		
<b>Sedan</b>		
3.0 litre	1612	3554
<b>Wagon</b>		
3.0 litre	1675	3692
<b>Production options</b>		
Sunroof	9.6	21.2
Xenon headlights	1.4	3.1
Headlight power wash	3.5	7.6
Electrically adjustable passenger seat - 8 way	5.5	12.1
Electrically adjustable front seats - 10 way	6.1	13.5
Premium audio system	6.8	15.0
CD autochanger	1.8	4.0
Navigation system	4.0	8.8
Rear spoiler (Wagon only)	2.8	6.2

# Cargo Weights

	Weight	
	kg	lb
<b>Wheels and tires</b>		
16 inch steel wheels	7.0	15.4
Caicos wheels	0.0	0.0
Tobago wheels	8.0	17.6
Cayman wheels	9.1	20.1
Andros wheels	11.1	24.5
Aguila wheels	9.1	20.1
Aruba wheels	18.1	39.9
Melbourne wheels	23.9	52.7
<b>Spare wheel and tire</b>		
16 inch spacesaver spare wheel	0.0	0.0
16 inch steel full-size spare wheel	6.0	13.2
Caicos spare wheel	4.2	9.3
Tobago spare wheel	6.2	13.7
Cayman spare wheel	6.5	14.3
Andros spare wheel	7.0	15.4
Aguila spare wheel	6.5	14.3
Aruba spare wheel	8.7	19.2
Melbourne spare wheel	10.2	22.5

**Note:** The weights listed under **Wheels and tires** give the increase in weight over a standard set of four wheels: the figure only needs to be added to the curbweight once. The **Spare wheel and tire** weight must also be added, where applicable.

# Engine Data

---

## ENGINE CONFIGURATION

<b>Engine</b>	<b>3.0 litre petrol</b>
Type	V6, dual overhead camshafts, 24 valves (4 valves per cylinder)
Capacity	2967 cm <sup>3</sup> (181 inch <sup>3</sup> )
Bore	8.90 cm (3.504 inch)
Stroke	7.95 cm (3.130 inch)
Compression ratio	10.5:1

# Weights

---

## 3.0 LITRE SEDAN

Gross combination weight is the gross vehicle weight plus recommended trailer weight.

	<b>Vehicles with automatic transmission</b>	
	<b>kg</b>	<b>lb</b>
Kerb weight, no options fitted	1600	3527
Front axle kerb weight	960	2116
Rear axle kerb weight	640	1411
Gross vehicle weight (G.V.W.)	2080	4585
Gross front axle weight	1076	2372
Gross rear axle weight	1004	2213
Gross combination weight	3580	7893

## 3.0 LITRE WAGON

	<b>Vehicles with automatic transmission</b>	
	<b>kg</b>	<b>lb</b>
Kerb weight, no options fitted	1670	3682
Front axle kerb weight	955	2105
Rear axle kerb weight	715	1576
Gross vehicle weight (G.V.W.)	2145	4728
Gross front axle weight	1082	2385
Gross rear axle weight	1063	2343
Gross combination weight	3645	8036

# Load Weights

---

## ALL VEHICLES

	<b>kg</b>	<b>lb</b>
Roof load capacity including weight of roof-rack and/or load carrier	75	165
Maximum permitted luggage compartment load with four passengers and driver	60	132
Trailer weight:		
Braked	1500	3306
Unbraked (maximum recommended)	750	1653
Trailer nose load	75	165

**Note:** Loads greater than 60 kg (132 lb) may be carried in the luggage compartment provided the maximum permissible axle weights shown on the Vehicle Identification Plate are not exceeded and that tires are inflated to the normal pressures.

# Dimensions

---

## ALL VEHICLES

	<b>cm</b>	<b>inch</b>
Overall length (Sedan)	467.2	183.9
Overall length (Wagon)	471.6	185.7
Overall width including mirrors	200.3	78.8
Overall width without mirrors	178.9	70.4
Overall height at gross vehicle weight	139.2	54.8
Wheelbase	271.0	106.7
Track:		
Front	152.2	59.9
Rear	153.7	60.5

# Touch-screen

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The touch-screen provides touch-control of vehicle climate, audio, navigation, television and telephone systems, as fitted. A small Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) screen below the touch-screen provides a digital display of the ambient temperature and vehicle cabin set temperature.

The touch-screen setup and user menus, clock setting, headlamp setting, door locking mode and auto-fold door mirrors information is described within this section.

**Note:** *Remember to pass on the vehicle handbooks when reselling the vehicle. Handbooks are integral parts of the vehicle.*

The buttons surrounding the touch-screen display are referred to as 'hard buttons' and should be pressed not touched. The screen buttons are 'soft buttons' and only require to be touched to function.

Throughout this section, the expression 'Select an item' (or similar wording), means 'Touch the on-screen button adjacent to the item required'.

### Pop-up messages

The operation of certain functions will cause a small message to appear overlaying the touch-screen display. This 'pop-up' is for information only and will disappear automatically after a few seconds.

## SCREEN CLEANING

**Caution:** Care must be taken to avoid spilling or splashing drinks onto the touch-screen. In the event of such an occurrence advise your Jaguar Dealer.

Do not use any abrasive cleaners to clean your touch-screen. For approved screen cleaners, see your Jaguar Dealer.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

The climate control system can be controlled from the touch-screen buttons (accessed via the CLIMATE button to the left of the touch-screen). See "Touch-screen Climate Control" on page 149.

# Touch-screen

---

## AUDIO SYSTEMS

The vehicle audio system interacts with the JaguarVoice, Navigation, In-car Telephone and Climate Control systems via data on the multiplex communications vehicle network.

The audio system can be controlled from the radio front panel buttons, the touch-screen buttons accessed via the **AUDIO** button on the left of the touch-screen and from multi-function controls on the left-hand side of the steering wheel, where fitted. See “STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS” on page 234.

The sound system antenna is an integral part of the vehicle rear screen and serves both FM and AM radio wavebands.

## IN-CAR TELEPHONE

See “SYSTEM OVERVIEW” on page 255.

## JAGUARVOICE

JaguarVoice provides a safe and convenient way for the driver and/or rear occupants to control the following vehicle systems (where fitted):

- Sound system (radio, CD player and CD changer – as applicable).
- In-car telephone.
- Climate control system (front user only unless 4-zone climate control is fitted).
- Television (where fitted).
- Display screen (front user only).
- Navigation (front user only).

The system is controlled in the front of the vehicle by the steering wheel voice button.

# Touch-screen Display

---

## TOUCH-SCREEN DISPLAY



JOL4764

### TOUCH-SCREEN USE AND CARE

When the ignition switch is initially turned to position **I** or **II**, the touch-screen will display the Jaguar logo screen followed by activation and display of the mode previously used. Display of buttons for other systems can be obtained by pressing the appropriate perimeter button. Functions of the **MENU** button are described on the following pages.



#### **WARNING:**

**In the interests of road safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.**

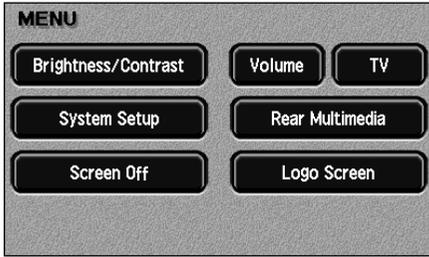
**Caution:** Care must be taken to avoid spilling or splashing drinks onto the screen. In the event of such an occurrence advise your Jaguar Dealer.

**Note:** When operating touch-screen buttons, always extend the tip of one finger, and withhold the thumb and remaining fingers from the screen. Touching the screen with more than one finger at a time may cause false inputs.

The touch-screen and inner bezel must be kept clean to maintain optimum performance. Finger marks and attracted dust should be regularly removed using a soft cloth and a Jaguar approved cleaning agent.

# Touch-screen Display

## MENU



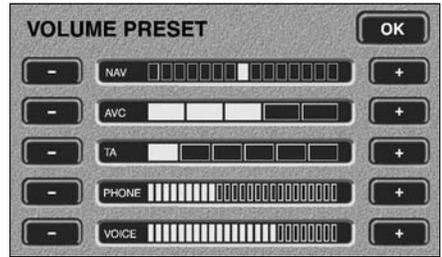
JOL2022a

Pressing the **MENU** perimeter button will display the system menu screen.

The screen display can be blanked out by touching the **Screen Off** button.

Touch the screen, or press any of the perimeter buttons, to restore the display.

## VOLUME PRESET



JOL1640

After touching the **Volume** button, the screen displays the buttons for adjustment of volume associated with the navigation system, JaguarVoice, telephone and Automatic Volume Control (AVC). Adjustment of AVC varies the rate at which volume is increased or decreased relative to vehicle speed.

Touch or hold the + or – button to adjust the volume of the selected function.

**Note:** *If any of the volume slides are adjusted to the fully – position, then the volume is turned fully off.*

Confirm your selection by touching OK and the system menu screen will once again be displayed.

# Touch-screen Display

## BRIGHTNESS/CONTRAST



After touching the **Brightness/Contrast** button, the screen displays the buttons for adjustment of the screen display characteristics. The centre window shows the currently selected navigation view. Touch the + or - button to adjust the selected function.

Screen brightness and contrast can also be dimmed for night driving. This is achieved either manually via the **Day**, **Night** or **Twilight** buttons (independent of the exterior light master switch position), or automatically via the **Auto** button (controlled by the exterior light master switch position).

Touch the **Default** button to restore the default settings.

Confirm your selection by touching **OK**.

## SYSTEM SETUP

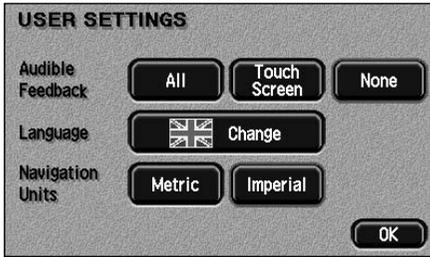


After touching the **System Setup** button, the screen displays the buttons for selecting user settings or vehicle settings.

**Note:** *Vehicles which have the JaguarVoice system fitted will have an additional button on the system setup screen for voice training.*

# Touch-screen Display

## User settings



After touching the **User Settings** button, the screen displays the buttons for the selection of audible feedback, language, and units of measurement.

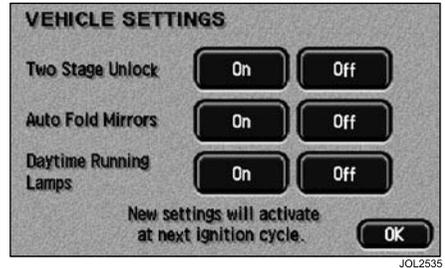
**All** selects audible feedback on the perimeter buttons and touch-screen buttons. **Touch Screen** selects audible feedback on the touch-screen buttons only. **None** selects no audible feedback.

To select another language, touch the **Change** button and, if the language is not shown, scroll the screen as required. To select a language, touch the flag of the country required.

**Navigation Units** provides either imperial or metric units for use with the navigation system.

Confirm your selection by touching **OK**.

## Vehicle settings



After touching the **Vehicle Settings** button, the screen displays the buttons that switch certain functions on or off.

### Two-stage unlock

If this function is switched on, the first press of the key transmitter 'unlock' button will only unlock the driver's door. Press the unlock button a second time to unlock the remaining doors.

If the function is switched off, pressing the unlock button once will unlock all of the doors.

### Auto fold door mirrors

When this function is switched on, the door mirrors will automatically fold flat when global closing is performed. See "VEHICLE LOCKING AND UNLOCKING" on page 47.

### Daytime running lamps

Where fitted, daytime running lamps will be activated. It is particularly useful when visiting countries where daytime running lamps are compulsory.

# Audio System

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The vehicle Audio system interacts with the in-car Phone system via data on the multiplex communications vehicle network.

The audio system can be controlled from either the radio panel or multi-function controls on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

The sound system antenna is an integral part of the vehicle backlight and serves both FM and AM radio wavebands.

**Caution: Care must be taken to avoid spilling or splashing drinks onto the audio system head. In the event of such an occurrence advise your Jaguar Dealer.**

Do not use petrol, solvents or abrasive cleaners on the audio system. Wipe the surface with a lint-free cloth to remove dust. Slightly moisten the cloth with clean water to remove any finger marks from the outside surface.

If the unit is to be removed or the battery disconnected, first ensure that the radio code is recorded. The number will be required for re-insertion following radio installation.

## COPYRIGHT LAWS

**Caution: Copyright laws vary in different countries; please check the laws in your country if you want to record from copyright source material.**

**Caution: Due to technical incompatibility, recordable (CD-R) discs and re-writable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.**

**Caution: These CD units will play compact discs that conform to the international Red Book standard audio specification. Copy protected CDs from some manufacturers do not conform to this standard and playback cannot be guaranteed.**

**Caution: Dual format, dual sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format), now being adopted by the music industry, are thicker than normal CDs and consequently playback cannot be guaranteed in Jaguar audio units, and jamming could occur. Warranty claims, where this type of disc is found to be inside an audio unit returned for repair, will not be accepted.**

**Caution: Irregular shaped CDs and CDs with a scratch protection film or self adhesive labels attached should not be used.**

# Audio System

---

## DUAL AND DVDPLUS DISCS

Please be aware that a new generation of DVDs is being adopted by the music industry. They are known as **Dual Discs** or **DVDPlus** discs. They have digital music on one side and video content on the other. Current in-car audio systems with a front loading CD player may load and play this type of disc, however, it is possible that the disc will not eject and therefore block up the player. Such damage to a CD player will not be covered under warranty.

## AUDIO SYSTEM CARE

### Radio

Do not use petrol, solvents or abrasive cleaners on the radio. Wipe the surface of the radio with a lint-free cloth to remove dust. Slightly moisten the cloth with clean water to remove any finger marks from the outside surface of the radio.

If the radio is to be removed or the battery disconnected, first ensure that the radio code is recorded. The number will be required for re-insertion following radio installation or battery reconnection.

### Compact Discs (CDs)

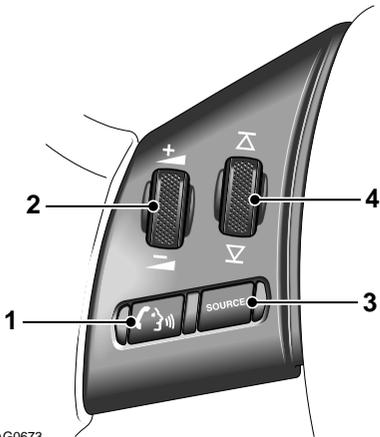
When handling CDs, do not touch the playing surface. CDs should be stored in their cases away from direct sunlight, heat and dust. Scratches, fingermarks or dust on the surface of a disc can cause the optical pick-up to skip tracks. If the surface of a CD is dirty, use an appropriate CD cleaner.

Do not attempt to play discs that are damaged, warped, cracked or of incorrect size. They can seriously damage the playback mechanism.

# Steering Wheel Controls

---

## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



JAG0673

Four audio system control switches are situated on the left-hand side of the steering wheel. Duplicating the functions of buttons on the audio panel, these provide fingertip control of audio and telephone systems whilst driving.

- 1.** Press to start a voice session, or mute when JaguarVoice is not fitted.  
Answer phone call when ringing.  
Send/End when in phone mode.
- 2.** Press as required to increase or decrease volume.
- 3.** Press and release to cycle through Radio FM, AM, CD and CD Changer, or press and hold for at least two seconds to select Phone Ready mode.
- 4.** Press as required and release to cycle through preset radio stations, the next CD track.  
Press and hold for at least two seconds to cycle to next strong station or next CD.

# Radio

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Reception

FM reception offers the advantages of low noise interference, minimal distortion, wide dynamic range, extended frequency response, and is usually broadcast in stereo. FM frequency waves are however relatively short and travel in a straight line and can therefore be impeded by obstructions, which may adversely affect reception in certain parts of the country. This is a condition known as multipath interference.

Whilst FM reception generally provides better quality sound, AM reception or Medium Waveband (MW) and Long Waveband (LW) (United Kingdom and Europe) may prove superior in remote areas not covered by the shorter range FM transmitters.

When experiencing poor FM reception, background noise can be reduced by pressing the **MODE** button, selecting **TREBLE** and reducing the treble setting.

### Radio Broadcast Data System (RBDS)

Jaguar sound systems are equipped with Radio Broadcast Data System (RBDS) which assists in locating and remaining tuned to a selected radio station. When tuned to certain stations on the FM waveband, the radio decodes signals transmitted, to provide the following functions (dependent upon the service available):

- When **RBDS** is selected the station name is displayed in eight characters.
- Automatic retuning to follow network stations:

RBDS provides fully automatic radio tuning for network stations. It tunes to a signal not a frequency. RBDS will locate the strongest signal available for a given station.

- RBDS will automatically switch frequencies (AF Switching) as necessary. This function can be toggled off and on by pressing and holding the **AM/FM** button.

- RBDS station/programme type display and search:

RBDS displays information on the type of material broadcast by the station or programme that is on e.g.

**News, Classical, Rock** etc. In addition to this function, the radio can search for a selected programme type.

# Radio

---

- RBDS priority Programme Type (PTY) auto retuning (where broadcast):

This option can be selected to interrupt and switch to the selected programme type e.g. **News**, for its duration.

## RBDS operation



To activate RBDS, press the **TA** button and hold for at least two seconds until **RBDS ON** is displayed.

To deactivate RBDS, press the **TA** button and hold until **RBDS OFF** is displayed.

With the radio tuned to an RBDS station and RBDS activated, the radio gathers RBDS information and displays the service name/data.

If the radio is not tuned to an RBDS station, it will remain on that station and display the frequency, and RBDS will remain on in readiness for a signal.

When listening to a national network station, or a station that broadcasts on more than one frequency, the radio will retune to the strongest available signal (AF Switching). This 'network following' will continue throughout the journey. (Unselected presets will also receive new frequency information, if appropriate.)

When RBDS data is lost and no alternative frequency signal is available, the radio will stay on station, the display shows the frequency only and RBDS remains on in readiness for the signal to recover.

See "RBDS troubleshooting guide" on page 238.

## Programme Type (PTY) (Where broadcast)



This has two functions: To display the current station programme type and to select a programme type and retune to it.

Briefly press the **PTY** button to display the current station programme type. Use the tuning buttons to cycle through the available programme types, press the **PTY** button again to activate a search for the selected programme type. If there is a station with the correct **PTY** then the radio will retune to it. If not, the radio will indicate **NO PTY** and return to the current station.

## Priority Programme Type (PPTY)

Functions as an interrupt or as a '**PTY Following**'.

Press and hold the **PTY** button (for at least two seconds) to activate the selected priority programme type, **PPTY**. The radio will now wait for RBDS information to indicate that a station has changed its programme type, e.g. to **NEWS**. The radio will now retune to the new station for the duration that it remains on that programme type.

If the current station is already on the selected priority programme type, then when this station is lost, the radio will attempt to find another with the correct programme type.

To cancel Priority Programme Type, press and hold the **PTY** button, the **PTY** indicator will clear from the display.

**Note:** The PPTY interrupt feature is also available in CD and audio modes.

# Radio

---

## **Priority PTY interrupt skip**

Interruptions for news or other selected priority programme types, can be skipped by pressing **TA** during the interrupt. The radio returns to the previously selected audio source.

### **Note:**

- *Interrupt skip will not cancel activation of **PPTY** and it will remain ready for the next interrupt.*
- ***PTY** and **PPTY** features are reliant upon the broadcast information from radio stations, and may be much better in some areas than others.*

## **PTY31-ALARM (where broadcast)**

When using the radio with **RBDS** selected, a **PTY31-ALARM** service will operate, to alert on any crises of major national importance. When such a broadcast is made, **ALARM** will appear in the audio display.

# Radio

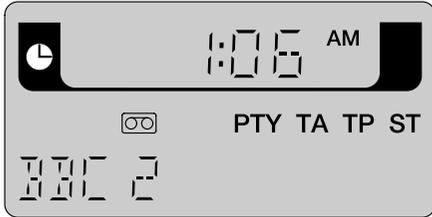
## RBDS troubleshooting guide

Incorrect response from RBDS	Reason and rectification
Radio does not display programme name.	Check that RBDS is turned on by pressing and holding the <b>TA</b> button until the display confirms <b>RBDS ON</b> . If the radio does not display a programme service name, it is not broadcasting RBDS data, or you are in a poor reception area. Try retuning to another station with RBDS.
Station name is lost and displays frequency only.	Radio has lost reception of the RBDS data due to vehicle moving out of transmitter range, loss of signal in a tunnel, under a garage forecourt canopy, or similar screening. If the latter is the case, when the vehicle is clear of the screening, the station name will return after a short delay.
Upon operating <b>A MEM, NO FM</b> is displayed when most or all of the preset positions are selected.	The radio cannot locate nine FM, RBDS FM or TP stations dependent upon the mode selected. If this occurs, switch off <b>RBDS</b> and reselect <b>A MEM</b> .
Radio sound goes off and the display shows <b>PI SEEK</b> .	The RBDS radio station selected is unable to confirm that the frequency tuned to has the correct RBDS data – Programme Identification (PI). It will then seek for a frequency that has the correct data.

# Radio

## RADIO - STANDARD AUDIO

### Audio system display panel



JOL.1245

Shown in AM/FM mode

### On/Off and volume control



Press the control knob to switch the radio on, press again to switch off. Turn the control knob clockwise to increase or counter clockwise to decrease volume.

Any volume setting made whilst in audio, phone, or voice activation mode, will be memorised for that system.

### Automatic Volume Control (AVC)

This maintains radio volume at a level sufficient to overcome road noise as vehicle speed increases or decreases.

To activate AVC, press and hold the volume control knob until **AVC** is displayed. To deactivate AVC, briefly press the volume control knob again. The level of AVC control can be adjusted by turning the volume control knob whilst in **AVC ON** mode. When AVC is ON, manual adjustment of volume will override the AVC setting.

### MODE button



The MODE button functions at two levels. Mode level 1 is used to adjust sound performance. Mode level 2 can be used to adjust the audio display clock, Voice Activation volume and to select Voice Activation Training.

### Mode level 1

A short press and release of the **MODE** button will access the mode level 1 menu. Subsequent short presses of the **MODE** button will scroll through the available modes. When the desired mode is displayed, use the rotary volume control to adjust the setting.

### Available modes

<b>BASS</b>	Increase/decrease
<b>TREBLE</b>	Increase/decrease
<b>BALANCE</b>	Left to right
<b>FADE</b>	Front to rear
<b>SUB LEVEL</b>	<i>Premium audio only.</i> Increase/decrease subwoofers
<b>DSP POSITION</b>	See Digital signal Processing (DSP) text
<b>ADVANCED MODE</b>	Allows access to mode level 2. When <b>ADV MODE N/Y</b> is displayed, turn the rotary volume control to select <b>ADV MODE YES</b> . Subsequent short presses of the <b>MODE</b> button will scroll through the mode level 2 menu.

# Radio

## Digital Signal Processing (DSP) (Premium audio system only)

DSP can optimise sound performance for specific seating positions. To adjust the setting:

- In Mode level 1, scroll to **DSP POSITION**.
- Use the rotary volume control to cycle through **POS F-LEFT** (front left), **POS F-RIGHT** (front right), **POS REAR** and **POS FRONT** until the desired setting is achieved.

After approximately five seconds with no further actions or adjustments, the audio system will return to the previous display.

**Note:** *To improve the comfort of passengers in the rear of the vehicle, the bass performance of the subwoofer is reduced when DSP mode is set to **POS ALL** or **POS REAR**.*

For optimum bass performance, do not select **POSS ALL** or **POS REAR**.

## Mode level 2 - ADVANCED MODE

When **ADV MODE YES** is selected subsequent short presses of the **MODE** button will scroll through the available modes. When the desired mode is displayed, use the rotary volume control to adjust the setting.

**Note:** *Mode level 2 can also be accessed via a long press of the **MODE** button.*

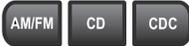
### Available modes

<b>CLOCK FORMAT SET</b>	Select 12 or 24 HR clock display. Press the <b>MODE</b> button to move to the next clock setting.
<b>CLOCK HOUR SET</b>	Adjust then press the <b>MODE</b> button to move to the next clock setting.
<b>CLOCK MINUTE SET</b>	Adjust then press the <b>MODE</b> button to save the clock settings and move to the next mode.
<b>VOICE VOLUME</b>	Increase/decrease.
<b>VOICE A</b>	Press the 'seek up' button to adjust.
<b>VOICE B</b>	Press the 'seek up' button to adjust.

Press and hold the **MODE** button to exit. The display will now revert to the screen in use before entering **CLOCK SET**.

# Radio

## Change audio system source



Press the desired audio system source button.

## Source tone memory

Bass and Treble positions are automatically memorised for AM radio, FM radio and CD, allowing individual settings for each mode.

## Band switch AM/FM

Pressing **AM/FM** repeatedly will cycle the radio through FM, Medium and Long Wavebands (as applicable). Band selection will be shown in the display panel. When a CD is being played, pressing the band switch will select radio operation.

## Presetting memorised radio stations



## WARNING:

**In the interests of road safety, do not attempt to preset a station whilst driving.**

On each waveband, nine stations can be memorised using keypad buttons **1** to **9**. After tuning to a station, press and hold the selected button until the unit 'beeps'. A station can be recalled from the preset memory by pressing and immediately releasing the button.

Pressing the steering wheel preset selector button will cycle through the preset stations.

## Seek and manual tuning



In AM/FM mode, pressing and releasing the left or right button will activate the radio in seek mode, tuning through the frequency range to the next available station. Pressing either button for more than two seconds will enter manual tuning mode.

# Radio

## Auto Memory (A MEM)



The Automatic Memory function programmes the nine strongest stations on a selected waveband to presets **1** to **9**.

**Note:** *These are additional to the preset stations described earlier.*

To activate this function, press and hold the **A MEM** button for at least two seconds.

The radio will be briefly muted while it searches the waveband for the nine strongest stations. When programming is complete the radio will default to preset number **1** and audio volume is restored.

If stations cannot be located for all preset positions, those that are found will be allocated positions commencing with number **1**, leaving the remainder not programmed. The display will show **NO FM** or **NO AM** if a selected preset is not programmed.

To switch between the A MEM preset stations and your own presets, press and immediately release the **A MEM** button.

## A MEM with Radio Broadcast Data System (RBDS) selected

If the **A MEM** function is operated while in **RBDS** mode, the radio will be muted briefly, while a search is made for the nine strongest RBDS stations.

## Radio Set Up

This function enables the radio to be set to user operating preferences. By selecting **SET UP** and using the preset buttons, the owner or Jaguar Dealer can adjust certain radio functions.

When in **SET UP**, pressing the relevant preset button, as detailed below, will display the facility selected and its state. The state of that facility can be changed by pressing the preset button again.

**To enter SET UP:** Press **CD Eject** and **AM/FM** buttons simultaneously.

The display will show **SET UP**. The following preferences can be selected or changed in any order, within a 15 second period. After 15 seconds the display will clear and exit **SET UP**.

**Preset 1** Press **Preset 1** to enable or disable RBDS availability in the user's country.

**Preset 2** Blank.

**Preset 3** Blank.

**Preset 4** Blank.

**Preset 5** Blank.

**Preset 6** FM volume high (compensate for poor signal strength).

**Note:** *This feature is not available in North America, Australia and Japan.*

# Radio

---

- Preset 7** Blank.
- Preset 8** Blank.
- Preset 9** Blank.
- Preset 10** During initial factory installation, this is used to set the radio to one of the following regions: Europe, USA, Australia or Japan. Regional settings determine the correct frequency increments required for seeking stations, automatic tuning etc.

**Note:** *The regions are preset at the factory. Should you require a regional change, consult your Jaguar Dealer.*

# Radio

## RADIO WITH TOUCH-SCREEN

### On/Off control



Press the control knob to switch the radio on, press again to switch off.



Pressing the **AUDIO** button can also turn on the radio. When using the touch-screen in other operating modes, such as Navigation, Television

(where fitted), Climate Control or any of the setup screens, pressing the **AUDIO** button will revert to the relevant audio screen.

### Volume control



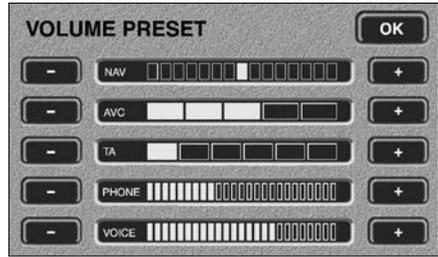
JOL1627

Turn the control knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease volume, across a range of settings (0 – 35) to be displayed during and momentarily after adjustment.

When using the rotary control knob to adjust volume the touch-screen will show the above display to assist setting. The pop-up volume control slide will disappear from the display after five seconds or can be removed by touching it.

Any volume setting made whilst in Audio, Telephone or Navigation mode or JaguarVoice, will be memorised for that system.

### Automatic Volume Control



JOL1640

This maintains radio volume at a level sufficient to overcome road noise as vehicle speed increases or decreases.

To activate AVC, press the **MENU** button, followed by the **VOLUME PRESET** button on the touch-screen. Once in the volume preset screen, AVC level can be adjusted (from OFF to 5) by repeatedly pressing the + or – buttons adjacent to the AVC volume indicator.

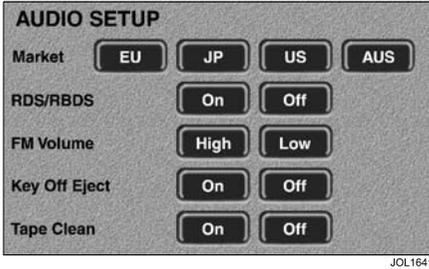
When AVC is ON, manual adjustment of volume will override the AVC setting.

### Volume preset adjustments

Volume for Telephone, JaguarVoice and Navigation can also be adjusted by using the **MENU** button on the right of the screen and selecting the volume preset button as appropriate.

# Radio

## Audio setup



This function enables the radio to be set to user operating preferences. By selecting **SETUP** and using the buttons on the touch-screen, the owner or Jaguar Dealer can adjust certain radio functions.

When in **SETUP**, pressing the relevant button will display the facility selected and its state. The state of that facility can be changed by pressing the button again.

**To enter SETUP:** Press **Eject** and **AM/FM** buttons simultaneously.

The display will show **AUDIO SETUP**. The preferences shown on the next page can then be selected or changed in any order. After 15 seconds the display will clear and exit **SETUP**.

### Market

During initial factory installation, this is used to set the radio to one of the following regions: Europe, Australia or Japan. Regional settings determine the correct frequency increments required for seeking stations, automatic tuning etc.

**Note:** *The regions are preset at the factory. Should you require a regional change, consult your Jaguar Dealer.*

### RBDS

Press ON/OFF buttons to enable or disable RBDS, depending upon RBDS availability in the user's country.

### FM Volume

FM volume high or low (compensate for poor signal strength).

**Note:** *This feature is not available in Australia and Japan.*

# Radio

## Digital Signal Processing (DSP)

DSP (premium audio system only) facilitates optimisation of sound for specific seating positions and is accessed via the **DSP** button shown on the touch-screen (audio screens only). The chosen setting can then be selected by touching the appropriate zone.

Options available are:

- Front left.
- Front right.
- Front centre.
- Rear seats.
- All seats.

## Change audio system source



Press the desired audio system source button.

## AM/FM mode



JOL1624

In AM/FM mode, touch-screen buttons provide for station selection and retuning. In addition, the upper panel displays waveband, **TA** and **PTY** as selected using the buttons on the radio panel.

## Band switch AM/FM

Pressing **AM/FM** repeatedly will cycle the radio through FM, Medium and Long Wavebands (as applicable). When a CD is being played, pressing the band switch will select radio operation.

## Presetting memorised radio stations



### WARNING:

**In the interests of road safety, do not attempt to preset a radio station whilst driving.**

On each waveband, nine stations can be stored in the bank of nine buttons displayed on the touch-screen. To store a radio station as a preset, touch the selected button until a beep sounds to acknowledge the station has been stored.

A station can be recalled from the preset memory by momentarily pressing any of the preset buttons. The selected preset is highlighted by a red halo around the appropriate button.

Pressing the steering wheel preset selector button will cycle through the preset stations.

## Seek and manual tuning



In AM/FM mode, touch and release **◀◀** **▶▶** to activate the radio in seek

mode, tuning through the frequency range to the next available station. Pressing either button for more than two seconds will enter manual tuning mode.

# Radio

---

## Auto Memory (A MEM)



The Automatic Memory function programmes the nine strongest stations on a selected waveband to presets **1** to **9**.

**Note:** *These are additional to the preset stations described earlier.*

To activate this function, press and hold the **A MEM** button for at least two seconds.

The radio will be briefly muted while it searches the waveband for the nine strongest stations. When programming is complete the radio will default to preset number **1** and audio volume is restored.

If stations cannot be located for all preset positions, those that are found will be allocated positions commencing with number **1**, leaving the remainder not programmed. The display will show **NO FM** or **NO AM** as appropriate.

To switch between the A MEM preset stations and your own presets, press and immediately release the **A MEM** button.

## **A MEM with Radio Broadcast Data System (RBDS) selected**

If the **A MEM** function is operated while in **RBDS** mode, the radio will be muted briefly, while a search is made for the nine strongest RBDS stations.

# Single CD Player

## SINGLE CD PLAYER - STANDARD AUDIO



JOL1634

The audio display will indicate which function has been selected. Messages include; **LOADING**, **EJECTING**, **MIX TRACKS**, **REPEAT TRACK**, **PAUSED** and **CUE/REVIEW**.

Inserting a CD into the CD aperture will start immediate play. The display will show **LOADING**, followed by **TR-01 00' 00"**. The CD symbol will also be displayed until the CD is ejected, regardless of the selected audio source.

### Eject and CD-in indicator

 When a CD is inserted, the CD icon is displayed. Press to eject the CD. The display will show **DISC EJECT** and the CD icon will be turned off.

### MIX

 To play random tracks from the disc, press and release the **MIX** button. **MIX** will be displayed. To cancel, press the **MIX** button again.

### CD button

 If you are playing the radio or CD changer, pressing the **CD** button will resume playing any CD installed in the player mechanism.

The audio display will show **TR-NN MM' SS"**, where **NN** is the current track number and **MM SS** is the track time in minutes and seconds.

Pressing the **CD** button while in CD play mode will pause the current track, the display will show **TR-NN PAUSE** where **NN** is the current track number. A subsequent press of the **CD** button will resume play mode.

This function can also be controlled by a switch on the steering wheel.

### REPEAT



Press and release the **REPEAT** button to repeat the current CD track being played. To cancel, press the **REPEAT** button again.

### Seek up and down



This control selects seeking of tracks up or down. Momentarily press the

right-hand button to skip to the next track. Repeated pressing will select further tracks.

The left-hand button returns to the beginning of the current track. Repeated pressing selects previous tracks.

Pushing and holding either button selects cue and review of the CD.

**Note:** *Sound level is reduced when cueing and reviewing a CD.*

# Single CD Player

## SINGLE CD PLAYER WITH TOUCH-SCREEN



JAG0654

- 1. AUDIO.** Press to turn the audio system ON, or to display relevant audio screen and associated touch-screen buttons.
- 2.** Touch-screen display.
- 3. MENU.** Press to access touch-screen options.
- 4. MIX.** Mix CDs or CD tracks playing order.
- 5. PTY.** Priority Programme Type (where broadcast).
- 6. TA.** Radio Broadcast Data System (where broadcast).
- 7. A MEM.** Automatically set station presets.
- 8. CDC.** Select CD changer.
- 9. CD.** Select compact disc play when in other audio mode, or CD pause (when a CD is inserted and playing).
- 10. AM/FM.** Radio waveband select.
- 11.** Seek AM/FM station, cue/review CD.
- 12. MODE.** Scroll to select sound settings.
- 13.** ON/OFF and volume control.
- 14.** Eject CD.

# Single CD Player



In **CD** mode, touch-screen buttons (shown above) provide selection of CD tracks.

The display will show the CD screen. The CD symbol will be displayed until the CD is ejected, regardless of the selected audio source.

Inserting a CD into the aperture will start it playing.

## Eject



Press to eject the CD.

## Mix



To play random tracks from the disc, press and release the **Mix** button. **MIX** will be displayed. To cancel, press the **Mix** button again.

## Repeat



Press and release the **Repeat** button to repeat the current CD track being played. To cancel, press the **Repeat** button again.

## Pause



Touch the pause button to pause CD play.

**Note:** *Pause button function changes to a play button, a subsequent press will resume CD play.*

## CD button



If you are playing the radio or CD changer, pressing **CD** will play the CD in the player. This function can also be controlled from the appropriate button on the steering wheel. See "Steering Wheel Controls" on page 234.

## Seek up and down



Touch and release to seek tracks up or down.

Momentarily press the right-hand button to skip to the next track. Repeated pressing will select further tracks.

The left-hand button returns to the beginning of the current track. Repeated pressing selects previous tracks.

Pushing and holding either button selects cue and review of the CD.

**Note:** *Sound level is reduced when cueing and reviewing a CD.*

# Compact Disc Changer

## COMPACT DISC (CD) CHANGER OPERATION

A CD changer (where fitted) is installed in the luggage compartment and will accommodate up to six discs, each mounted in a tray.

**Caution: The 8 cm diameter discs and associated adaptors available in some countries must not be installed in the CD changer magazine. Any attempt to install these items can result in permanent damage to the CD changer mechanism.**

### CD check sequence

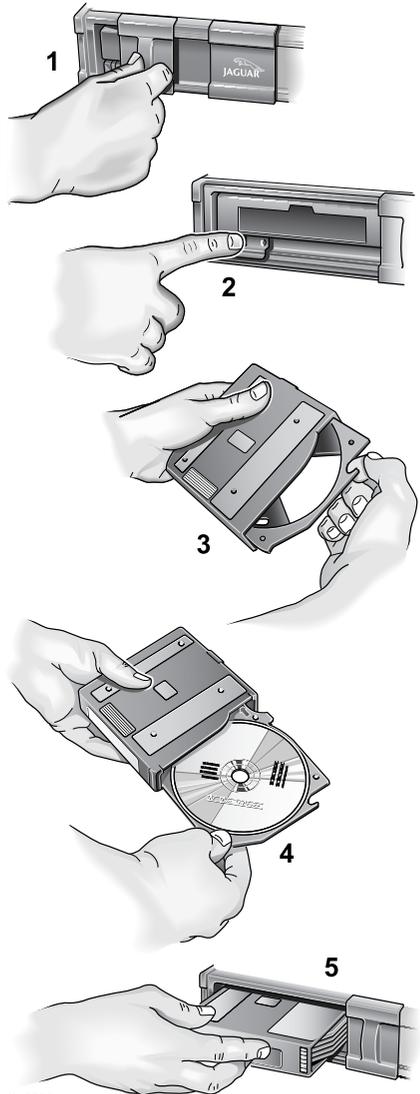
When the CD player is switched on, a check is performed on each disc tray in the CD changer magazine. When the six trays have been checked the player returns to the first disc in the magazine.

### Loading discs and inserting magazine

#### Loading a disc into a magazine tray:

Slide the magazine door to the right (1). Press the eject button (2), the magazine will then partly eject from the CD changer. Pull the disc tray from the magazine (3). Ensuring the playing surface is not touched, load a selected disc into the tray with the label facing upwards (4). Push the tray back into the magazine until it clicks. Tray slots are numbered 1 (bottom) to 6 (top).

**Inserting the magazine:** With the arrow mark facing upwards and pointing towards the CD changer, insert the loaded magazine into the CD changer (5) ensuring that it clicks into position. Close the sliding door. Keep the sliding door closed to prevent dust entering the playing mechanism.



JOL3299

# Compact Disc Changer

## CD CHANGER - STANDARD AUDIO

### CD changer mode

The audio display indicates the CD and track being played, and CD status.

Below is an example of the display when playing track 1 from CD 4.



JOL.1244

Other messages:

- CD1 LOADING** CD1 is being loaded.
- NO DISC** In the selected position.
- NO MAGAZINE** In the CD autochanger.
- CD1 MIX 10** The player is playing CD1 in MIX mode (track 10).
- D MIX** All CDs are in MIX mode.
- MAG EJECT** Magazine is being ejected.
- PAUSED** The CD changer is paused and ready to play.

### CDC button



Press **CDC** to select CD changer mode.

This function can also be controlled from the appropriate switch on the steering wheel.

### CD selection



Preset buttons **1** to **6** select the compact discs in those positions in the magazine. If there is no disc in the selected position, **NO DISC** will be displayed. If there is no magazine in the CD changer, **NO MAGAZINE** will be displayed.

### MIX



To play random tracks from the disc, press and release the **MIX** button. **MIX** will be displayed. To cancel, press the **MIX** button again.

To play random tracks from all discs present in the magazine, press the **MIX** button for two seconds. **DISC MIX** will be momentarily displayed, followed by **D MIX**. To cancel, press and hold the **MIX** button.

# Compact Disc Changer

## Seek up and down



This control selects seeking of tracks up or down.

Momentarily press the right-hand button to skip to the next track. Repeated pressing will select further tracks.

The left-hand button returns to the beginning of the current track. Repeated pressing selects previous tracks.

Pushing and holding either button selects cue and review of the CD.

**Note:** Sound level is reduced when cueing and reviewing a CD.

## REPEAT



Momentarily press the **REPEAT** button to repeat the current CD track being played,

**R-ONE** will be displayed. To cancel, momentarily press the **REPEAT** button again.

Press and hold the **REPEAT** button for two seconds to repeat the current CD, **R-ALL** will be displayed. To cancel, press and hold the **REPEAT** button again for two seconds.

## Pause



When playing a CD, press the **CDC** button to pause play. Press again to continue play.

## CD CHANGER WITH TOUCH-SCREEN

### CD changer mode



In CD changer mode, touch-screen buttons (shown above) provide for track and disc selection. Discs present in the magazine are highlighted in the display.

A disc is selected by touching the appropriate disc button which, when playing, has a red active surround.

The track and track duration are displayed during play.

### CDC button



Press **CDC** to select CD changer mode.

**Note:** This function can also be controlled from the appropriate button on the steering wheel. See "Steering Wheel Controls" on page 234.

# Compact Disc Changer

---

## Mix and CD mix



To play random tracks from a selected disc, press and release the **Mix** button. **MIX TRACKS** will be displayed. To cancel, touch the **Mix** button again.

To play random tracks from all discs present in the magazine, touch and hold the **Mix** button for more than two seconds. **MIX ALL** will be displayed. To cancel, touch and hold the **Mix** button.

## Seek up and down



Touch and release to seek tracks up or down.

Momentarily press the right-hand button to skip to the next track. Repeated pressing will select further tracks.

The left-hand button returns to the beginning of the current track. Repeated pressing selects previous tracks.

Pushing and holding either button selects cue and review of the CD.

**Note:** *Sound level is reduced when cueing and reviewing a CD.*

## Repeat



Momentarily press the **Repeat** button to repeat the current CD track being played. **REPEAT TRACK** will be displayed. To cancel, momentarily press the **Repeat** button again.

Press and hold the **Repeat** button for two seconds to repeat the current CD.

**REPEAT DISC** will be displayed. To cancel, press and hold the **Repeat** button again for two seconds.

## Pause



Touch the pause button to pause CD play.

**Note:** *Pause button function changes to a play button, a subsequent press will resume CD play.*

# Telephone Introduction

---

## INTRODUCTION

### What is Bluetooth?

Bluetooth is an international standard that allows electronic components to communicate with each other, using a short-range radio link. Bluetooth eliminates the need for wires or cables: typically, devices can communicate at a range of up to 10 metres (33 feet).

The Bluetooth in-car telephone system allows certain mobile phones to be used hands-free in your vehicle: there is no need to connect the mobile phone to a cradle or cable.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

## SYSTEM OVERVIEW

The vehicle's Bluetooth telephone system can be used with an appropriate, Bluetooth-equipped mobile phone.

The mobile phone must be paired with the vehicle system before use. See "PAIRING YOUR PHONE" on page 259.

Once paired, the mobile phone can be operated via the steering wheel switches or the keypad and phone buttons on the audio panel or touch-screen. The mobile phone doesn't need to be physically connected to the vehicle: it can be left in a jacket pocket, for instance. Calls are routed through the vehicle's audio speakers, and a dedicated microphone is fitted to the roof lining, near the driver's head.

You can use the system to answer or reject incoming calls, make outgoing calls or alter the call volume. The system does not support SMS text messages.

**Note:** *The vehicle ignition must be set to position I or II in order to use the phone.*

### Call volume

The volume of telephone calls can be adjusted for hands-free phone operation. To adjust the volume, operate the audio system's ON/OFF volume control during a phone call.

If the audio system is in use when the phone becomes active, the audio system source is suppressed for the duration of the call.

The Jaguar telephone system is designed to function with a wide variety of Bluetooth-equipped mobile phones. The audio and echo characteristics vary between models of mobile phones: as a result, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle system to adapt to provide optimal audio performance.

In order to achieve the best possible audio performance, it may be necessary to reduce the system volume slightly when using certain mobile phones.

### Audio panel display

Phone related messages are shown on the audio panel display or touch-screen (where fitted) when the phone system is active.

# Telephone Introduction

---

## VOICE ACTIVATION

The Bluetooth telephone system can be used in conjunction with the Voice Activation system to provide the driver with completely hands-free communication. Voice commands are picked up by the system microphone.

For information about using Voice Activation. See "USING THE SYSTEM" on page 275.



### **WARNING:**

**The Voice Activation system must not be used to call emergency numbers, as voice patterns can change under stress, resulting in commands becoming unrecognisable.**

## SAFETY



### **WARNING:**

**Read this information before using your in-car telephone system.**

### **Driving**

Check local regulations on the use of telephones in the areas where you drive and always obey them. Observe the following guidelines when using your phone whilst driving:

- Give full attention to driving - safe driving is your first responsibility.
- Always use hands-free operation when driving.
- When receiving a call, if driving conditions demand, pull off the road and park.

### **Electronic devices**

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from Radio Frequency (RF) signals.

However, certain equipment may not be shielded against RF signals from your telephone.

### **Pacemakers**

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 centimetres (6 inches) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by and recommendations of Wireless Technology Research.

# Telephone Introduction

---

Persons with pacemakers should:

- Preferably use the vehicle hands-free system.
- ALWAYS keep the phone more than 15 centimetres (6 inches) from the pacemaker when the phone is switched ON.
- Turn the phone OFF immediately if there is any reason to suspect that interference is taking place.

## Other medical devices

If you use any other personal medical device, consult the manufacturer of your device, or your doctor, to determine that it is adequately shielded from external RF energy.

Turn your phone OFF in health care facilities when any regulations posted in such areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

## Vehicles

RF signals may affect non-Jaguar or improperly installed equipment. Always consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been retro-fitted to your vehicle.

## Posted facilities

Turn your phone OFF in any facility where posted notices so require.

## Blasting areas

To avoid interfering with blasting operations, turn your phone OFF when in a blasting area or in areas posted: Turn off two-way radios. Obey all signs and instructions.

## Potentially explosive atmospheres

Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. Turn your phone OFF when you are in such an area, as the use of unapproved electrical equipment can cause an explosion or fire resulting in bodily injury or death.

## Air bags

Air bags inflate with great force.



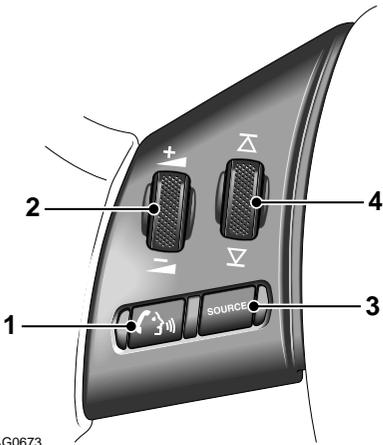
## WARNING:

**Do NOT place objects, including both installed or portable wireless equipment, in the area over an air bag or in the air bag deployment area. If in-vehicle wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.**

# Telephone System

## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

Four system control switches are situated on the left-hand side of the steering wheel, duplicating the functions of buttons on the audio panel. These switches provide finger-tip control of Audio, Telephone and Voice Activation systems whilst driving.



JAG0673

Switch	Function
1	Start voice function, or mute where voice not fitted. Answer phone call when ringing. Send/End when in Phone mode.
2	Increase/decrease volume.
3	Hold for two seconds to select Phone Ready mode. Press and release to cycle through FM, AM, CD and CD Changer.
4	In Phone mode, scroll through stored numbers. In Audio mode, scroll through radio stations or CD tracks. Press and hold to select next strong radio station or next CD.

# Telephone System

---

## PAIRING YOUR PHONE

Before use, your mobile phone must be connected or paired with the vehicle's Bluetooth system.

### Vehicles with touch-screen

Follow these steps to pair your phone with the vehicle:

- Switch the vehicle's ignition ON (position II).
- Press the  button, to the left of the touch-screen.
- Ensure that no phone is currently connected to the car.
- The message **Discover Me** will be displayed, to confirm that the system is ready to pair with a mobile phone.
- Switch on your mobile phone's Bluetooth connection, using the phone's menu. (See your phone's manual for more information).
- Select search for other Bluetooth devices or Audio Accessories from your mobile phone's menu.
- Select Jaguar in your phone's paired device list, in order to connect to the vehicle's Bluetooth system.
- Enter the Passkey on your mobile phone (the Passkey is 1313).
- After a short delay, the messages **Registered** followed by **Phone Connected** will confirm that the phone and vehicle are paired.

### Note:

- *When a mobile phone is paired to the vehicle and the Bluetooth connection is established, at least one bar will be displayed next to the antenna icon (depending on the type of mobile phone used and whether or not it supports the Bluetooth signal strength feature). However, you will need to refer to your mobile phone's display to determine the strength of the network signal.*
- *If an incorrect Passkey is entered, your mobile phone should prompt you to enter the correct Passkey.*

# Telephone System

---

## Vehicles without touch-screen

Follow these steps to pair your phone with the vehicle:

- Switch the vehicle's ignition ON (position **II**).
- Press the  button on the audio panel.
- Ensure that no phone is currently connected to the car.
- **SIG\*\*\*\*** will be displayed followed by **SIG\*\*\*\***.
- Switch on your mobile phone's Bluetooth connection, using the phone's menu. (Refer to the manual for of your specific phone).
- Select search for other Bluetooth devices or Audio Accessories from your mobile phone's menu.
- Select Jaguar in your phone's paired device list, in order to connect to the vehicle's Bluetooth system.
- Enter the Passkey on your mobile phone (the Passkey is 1313). **SIG** will be displayed initially.
- Once the vehicle and phone are paired, **SIG \*** will appear on the audio panel.

**Note:** *If your mobile phone supports the signal strength feature, the Bluetooth signal strength (or number of \*s) will be displayed.*

Once a mobile phone is paired with the vehicle, **SIG** will be displayed initially when the ignition is switched ON. **SIG\*** will then be displayed, once the phone is detected.

If the phone is not detected within two minutes (after switching ON the ignition), the audio system will exit phone mode and revert to its previous audio mode.

### **Note:**

- *Once a mobile phone is paired with the vehicle, **SIG\*** (or if the mobile phone supports the signal strength feature, the signal strength according to the phone) will be displayed initially when the ignition is switched ON. If no phone is detected, the message **SIG\*\*\*\*** or **\*\*\*\*** will confirm that no phone is connected.*
- *If an incorrect Passkey is entered, your mobile phone should prompt you to enter the correct Passkey.*

Once a mobile phone is paired with the vehicle, the vehicle will look for this specific phone every time the ignition is switched ON, followed by the previously four paired phones.

## Pairing other phones

Five mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle at a time. Once paired, the vehicle will look for the same phone each time the ignition is switched ON (position **II**): you do not need manually to pair the phone with the vehicle every time you switch the ignition ON.

The Bluetooth function of your mobile phone must be switched on when the ignition is switched ON in order for it to pair with the vehicle automatically.

If a different Bluetooth mobile phone is to be used with the vehicle, it must be paired manually, as described previously. This phone will then become the highest priority phone, which the system will look for each time the ignition is switched ON.

# Telephone System

---

## **Disconnecting (unpair) a phone**

To disconnect a mobile phone from the system, use the mobile phone's keypad. Refer to your phone's handbook for more details.

## **RECONNECTING A PHONE**

Once a mobile phone has been paired with the vehicle, Jaguar may be shown in the phone's list of Bluetooth devices (see your mobile phone manual for more information). If you intend to pair your mobile phone to multiple vehicles, it is advised that you change the name of your car from the default (e.g. Jaguar to your registration number).

If you manually unpair the phone, it is advisable to delete Jaguar from the list of Bluetooth devices before pairing it with the vehicle again.

## **PAIRING STRATEGY**

It is possible to pair up to five mobiles with the Jaguar Bluetooth telephone facility. When an attempt is made to add a new mobile phone with five phones already paired, the system will delete the oldest connected mobile phone. All associated phonebook records will also be deleted prior to pairing the new mobile phone.

## **CONNECTION STRATEGY**

Whilst the vehicle has the capability to pair up to five mobile phones, only one phone can be connected at any one time. Once the ignition is switched on, the vehicle will attempt to connect to the previously connected phone. If it is not available, it will attempt to connect to the next previously connected phone. The system will continue to search until a paired phone is connected.

**Note:** *Searching for connection to the mobile phone will cease once a phone has been detected and connected to the system. If a new phone is paired and connected to the system, this will also cease the search as it will become the most recently connected phone.*

## **SILENT MODE**

Certain mobile phones have a silent mode or profile, which prevents the handset from ringing when a call is received.

If the mobile phone is set to silent, it will also prevent the vehicle phone system from ringing.

# Telephone Operation - Standard

## AUDIO PANEL OVERVIEW



JAG0606

1. ON/OFF switch and volume control.
2. Phone mode button.
3. Clear/correct telephone numbers.
4. Phone memory recall button.
5. Phone send/end calls
6. Display.
7. Phone keypad - buttons **0** to **9** (except where touch-screen is fitted).
8. Scroll memory location.

### Audio panel control functions

The audio panel controls are described below.

#### Volume control

During a call, the phone volume can be adjusted using the audio panel volume control or the steering wheel switches.

The volume will be memorised for future calls (this will not alter other audio volume settings).

#### Phone mode



This button will activate the phone mode, ready to make a call. The display will indicate that phone mode has been selected.

This function can also be controlled from the steering wheel: press and hold button **3**. See “STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS” on page 258.

# Telephone Operation - Standard

---

## Keypad



Press the digits to enter the required telephone number. Each key press will beep and the digits will be displayed on the audio panel.

The keypad can also be used in Memory Recall (**MR**), to enter a location number, or to scroll up/down the memory locations.

## Clear



Press and release **CLEAR** to clear the last digit of a telephone number.

Press and hold **CLEAR** to clear all digits entered.

## Send/end



Press this button to dial the entered telephone number. It is also used to end a call that is in progress.

## Memory Recall



Press to access the phone memory location number.

Either a memory location number can be entered from the keypad, or memory locations can be scrolled up and down from the keypad scroll keys.

This function can also be controlled using steering wheel button **4**. See “STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS” on page 258. Press the upper or lower part of the control to seek up or down through the numbers in the phone memory.

## Display messages

The following messages may be displayed:

- **CALL** - There is an incoming call.
- **CALLING** - A call is being established.
- **EMPTY** - Memory location is empty.
- **LOCATION** - Memory location number or prompt for memory location number.
- **NO SERVICE** - No cellular or Bluetooth service is available.
- **PHONE** - System entering phone mode.
- **Please Wait - phone book information loading** - A short delay will be experienced whilst information is transferred from your mobile phone.
- **SIG** - System Indicator Gauge: this indicates the current status of the Bluetooth telephone system. If your phone supports the signal strength feature, this information will be displayed.

# Telephone Operation - Standard

---

## RECEIVING A CALL

An incoming call automatically switches the sound system into the phone mode. The audio panel display will show **CALL** and the phone will ring through the vehicle's audio system.

If automatic answer has been set in your phone, the call will be automatically answered by your mobile telephone.

### To answer:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

### To end:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

## Call line Ident

If the caller has the Call Line Ident (CLI) feature, **CALL** is shown on the audio panel display, followed by the caller's phone number and name (when available). The display may truncate lengthy names.

## REJECTING A CALL

 CLEAR

Press **CLEAR** on the audio panel to reject an incoming call.

## MAKING A CALL

When making a call, there are two methods of dialling: keypad and memory search.

### Keypad dialling

#### To dial:

Press and hold  on the steering wheel or;

press  on the audio panel.

**PHONE** will be displayed.

Key in the phone number on the audio panel keypad. The number will be displayed.

#### To connect:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

The display will show **CALLING**.

#### To end:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

### Speed dialling

*Note: Speed dialling selects the first nine locations stored in your phone's address book.*

#### To dial:

Press and hold  on the steering wheel or;

press  on the audio panel.

**PHONE** will be displayed.

On the audio panel keypad, press and hold the required speed dialling memory location number **1** to **9**, which corresponds with locations 1 to 9 in your mobile phone's address book.

After three seconds, **CALLING** will be displayed.

# Telephone Operation - Standard

---

## To end:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

**Note:** *Speed dialling can only be used once your mobile phone's address book has been transferred to the vehicle's phone system. See "PHONE BOOK TRANSFERS" on page 271..*

## MEMORY RECALL DIALLING

### Using audio panel

Press  on the audio panel.

**Phone** will be displayed.

Press the **MR** button.

**LOCATION** will be displayed.

On the audio panel keypad, press required memory number **1** to **499**.

**Note:** *The location number of phone book entries stored on your mobile phone may vary from those stored in the vehicle phone book.*

### To connect:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

The display will show **CALLING**.

### To end:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

## Using steering wheel controls

Press and hold button **3**. See "STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS" on page 234.

**PHONE** will be displayed.

On the audio panel keypad, press required memory number **1** to **749**.

### To connect:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

The display will show **CALLING**.

### To end:

Press  on the steering wheel or; press  on the audio panel.

## LAST NUMBER REDIAL

**Note:** *Last number redial is only supported on systems fitted with a touch-screen.*

## MULTIZONE VOICE

To transfer control of the phone from the rear of the vehicle to the front, when not on a call, press  once.

The display will show **Phone In Use**.

Press  a second time and the display will show **Phone**.

The rear system is now out of phone mode and the front occupants have full, hands-free control.

To transfer control of the phone during a call, press .

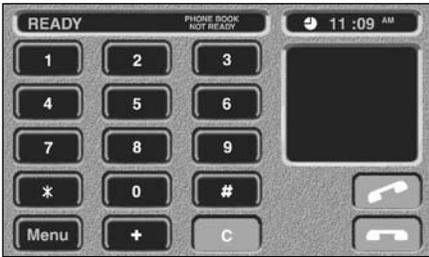
# Telephone Operation - Touch-Screen

## OVERVIEW

On vehicles fitted with the Navigation system, the audio panel keyboard is replaced with touch-screen controls.

Control of the system via the steering wheel controls is unchanged, as described in the previous section.

With the starter switch in position **I** or **II**, pressing the  button to the left of the screen will display the following screen controls.



JOL3513

The message window to the right of the screen will provide information on the telephone system's status. If the phone is connected correctly then the display will show **Phone Connected**, or if the phone is not connected to the vehicle, **Discover Me** will be displayed.

## MAKING A CALL



JOL3513

Calls are made by using the digit and  touch-controls, or the memory functions. See "OTHER FUNCTIONS" on page 267.

Erroneous digits can be deleted by touching .

The number called is displayed at the top of the screen.

The screen will display **Calling** when establishing a call. On connection, **Connected** is displayed and  is illuminated.

If the ignition is switched off, the call will be maintained and the touch-screen can be manually turned off. Touch  to terminate the call.

# Telephone Operation - Touch-Screen

## RECEIVING A CALL



JOL1781

On receipt of a call, the screen will display **Incoming Call** regardless of the audio system operating mode.

This is accompanied by **Accept** and **Cancel** touch-controls, enabling the user to answer the call or cancel it.

## END CALL FUNCTION

A telephone icon is displayed whenever a telephone call is in progress.

The icon is displayed during an incoming call and during an outgoing call.

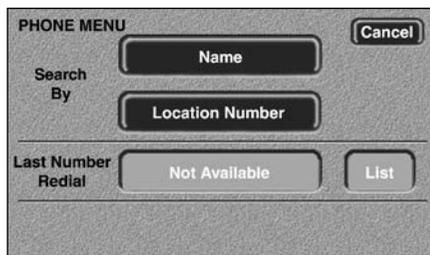
The telephone call may be ended by touching the icon.



Telephone call is in progress. Call may be ended by touching this icon.

## OTHER FUNCTIONS

### Using the menu

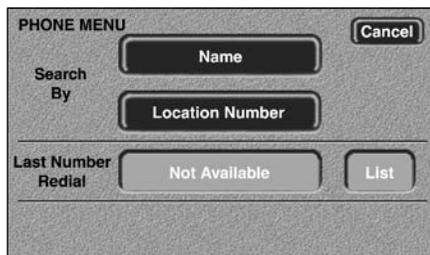


JOL3495

Touch **Menu** to display the above screen. This screen provides access to memory functions and last number redial.

When the vehicle is in motion, it will not be possible to use the **Name** touch-control.

### Last number redial



JOL3495

The **Last Number Redial** memory function enables the user to quickly recall the previously used number.

Use of the **List** touch-control will display the last ten numbers dialed.

**Note: Last Number Redial** recalls the last ten numbers called from your mobile phone, if your phone supports this feature.

*With certain mobile phones, the last number redial may work in reverse order. This is the way the phone sends the call stack to the vehicle's system.*

# Telephone Operation - Touch-Screen

## Searching by Name

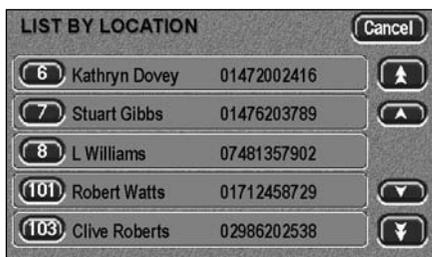
It is possible to list names stored in the vehicle phone book, whilst the vehicle is in motion.



### WARNING:

**Jaguar recommends that the driver does not use this feature whilst the vehicle is in motion. Give full attention to driving - safe driving is your first responsibility.**

## Location number



The **Location Number** screen enables the user to search the phone memory by location.

Upon pressing the location number touch-control, a location number is requested. A list of locations is then displayed as above (dependent upon those stored in the memory). The desired location may then be dialled by touching the location number.

When the vehicle is in motion, the scroll touch-controls at the right-hand side of the touch-screen will be inhibited for safety.

## Note:

*The location number of phone book entries stored on your mobile phone may vary from those stored in the vehicle phone book.*

# Telephone Operation - Touch-Screen

## Name entry



JOL1782

On the phone menu, select **Name**. The screen above will be displayed. Touch the required alphabetical group to narrow your search, then scroll through the list.

## List by name



JOL2719

With the memory list displayed above, scroll through the list of names using the arrowed buttons. Touch the desired list number to make the call.

Use  to terminate the call.

## MULTIZONE VOICE

To transfer control of the phone from the rear of the vehicle to the front, when not on a call, press  once.

The display will show **Phone In Use**.

Press  a second time and the screen below will be displayed:



JOL3513

The rear system is now out of phone mode and the front occupants have full hands-free control.

To transfer control of the phone during a call, press .

# Telephone Operation - Touch-Screen

---

## ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

### Continuity of calls

Whilst in a call in hands-free mode, the call remains connected if the vehicle ignition is turned OFF (position **0**). When the call ends, another call cannot be made or received through the vehicle system unless the ignition switch is turned to position **I** or **II**.

### DTMF tones

Whilst in a call you can transmit a DTMF (Dual Tone Multi-Frequency) tone, to remotely control equipment such as an answering machine. Key in the appropriate numbers on the audio panel keypad. The numbers entered will be displayed on the audio panel.

### Scratch pad

During a call, the audio panel keypad may be used to store a number to be dialled once the current call is terminated. The number entered will be displayed on the audio panel: once the current call is terminated, the number can be dialled by pressing  on the steering wheel, or  on the audio panel.

**Note:** DTMF tones may be heard when entering a number.

### Changing a phone number

When making a call, you can change the phone number shown on the audio display using the CANCEL button (audio panel) or C (touch-screen).

A momentary press erases any single digit, a long press erases the complete number.

### PIN feature

The PIN feature is not supported by the Bluetooth telephone system.

Therefore, please ensure that your mobile phone is not locked by a PIN whilst it is connected to the Bluetooth telephone system.

# Phone Book

---

## PHONE BOOK TRANSFERS

Any phone numbers stored in your mobile phone book can be copied to the vehicle's phone system.

In most cases, this will happen automatically when you pair the phone with the vehicle. Refer to [www.jaguar.com](http://www.jaguar.com) to check compatibility.

However, with some mobile phones, you may need to manually transfer the phone book.

- Make sure the vehicle ignition is ON and the vehicle and phone are paired.
- Press the  button on the audio panel or touch-screen surround.
- Switch OFF the ignition and wait for your phone to disconnect from the vehicle, to allow the vehicle Bluetooth system to complete the download process.

### Updating the phone book

Once the phone book has been copied to the vehicle, it will be updated automatically if your phone supports automatic phone book download.

Certain phones allow single or multiple phone book entries to be transferred to the vehicle (refer to the manual of your specific mobile phone for more information). These entries will be added to the end of the vehicle phone book.

**Note:** *The location number of phone book entries stored on your mobile phone may change once they are transferred to the vehicle phone book: location numbers are not preserved when phone books are copied via Bluetooth.*

If you wish to pair a new phone with the vehicle and replace the current vehicle phone book, follow the relevant pairing procedure. See “PAIRING YOUR PHONE” on page 259.

# Phone Book

## Phone book capacity

Mobile Phone Configuration	Vehicle Phone Book Capacity
Phone supports phone memory and SIM card downloads.	750 (phone memory takes priority over the SIM card).
Phone only supports phone memory downloads.	750 (from phone memory).
Phone only supports SIM card downloads.	750 (from SIM card).
Phone doesn't support phone memory or SIM card downloads.	0.

The system can store a maximum of 750 entries, but this figure varies, depending on the type of mobile phone used.

Certain mobile phones store the phone book in two different areas: the SIM card and the phone memory. With some mobile phones, it is not possible to transfer addresses stored in one or both of these areas. The table above explains how this affects the number of entries that can be stored in the vehicle phone book.

**Note:** *Certain mobile phones do not allow phone book entries stored on the SIM card to be transferred via Bluetooth. However, it may be possible to transfer the SIM phone book to the mobile phone's memory, before copying it to the vehicle phone book. Refer to your mobile phone manual for more information.*

## Phone book suffixes

With some mobile phones, it is possible to store phone numbers in different categories:

- Work/Office
- Mobile
- Home.

If numbers are stored in your mobile phone in these categories, the vehicle phone book will add a suffix to each entry: WK (work/office), MN (mobile) or HM (home).

This enables the system to handle contacts who have several different phone numbers.

# Declaration of Conformity

---

## EXPORT CONTROLS

This product contains commodities, technology or software exported from the United States in accordance with the Export Administration regulations. Diversion contrary to U.S. or Canadian law is prohibited.

## FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC ID: LHJ \*\*\*

IC: 2807E \*\*\*

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Note:** *This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.*

*This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.*

*If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:*

- *Re-orient or relocate the receiving antenna.*
- *Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.*
- *Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.*
- *Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.*

# JaguarVoice

---

## INTRODUCTION

JaguarVoice provides a safe and convenient way of controlling the following vehicle systems (where fitted):

- Sound system (radio, single CD player and CD changer – as applicable).
- In-car telephone.
- Climate control system (front user only unless - zone climate control is fitted).

The system is controlled by the Voice button on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

See the illustrations on the following pages.



### **WARNING:**

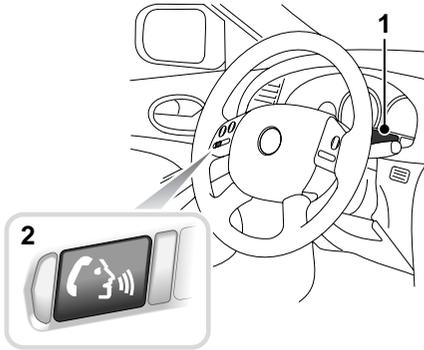
**Concentrate on the current road conditions and driving the vehicle at all times. If the voice system does prompt you for a response it will repeat that prompt twice giving you up to 15 seconds to respond. If driving conditions mean that you are unable to respond, the voice system will time-out, cancel the task and will not make any changes to the vehicle settings.**

## Language and accent

Commands are given in English using a natural speaking voice, without pausing between words. Most accents are understood without difficulty, but the system also allows you to train the voice system with your voice if required. See “VOICE TRAINING” on page 286.

# JaguarVoice

## Steering wheel voice switches



JAG0825

1. Message centre display.
2. Voice button.
3. Mode button, on radio.
4. Seek/tuning control, on radio (used to commence voice training).

## USING THE SYSTEM

### Initialisation

JaguarVoice is ready to operate ten seconds after the starter switch is turned to position II; the system is enabled.

### Driver voice controls

The voice button is on the left-hand side of the steering wheel. See “Steering wheel voice switches” on page 275.

Some examples of using the system are provided on the following pages for you to try.

**Note:** The system will not operate until the radio security code has been entered.

# JaguarVoice

---

First try some of these commands:

## Tuning the radio

Your instructions to the system	System response
Press and release the voice button	'Beep'
After the beep say ' <b>Radio tune 98.9 FM</b> '	The system responds with: 'Radio tune 98.9 FM' and tunes the radio to this frequency

Now try entering a frequency of your own preference. See "HOW TO SAY NUMBERS" on page 281.

## Storing a nametag to this station

Your instructions to the system	System response
Press and release the voice button	'Beep'
After the beep say ' <b>Radio store name</b> '	The system responds with: 'Radio store name, Name Please'
Press and release the voice button	'Beep'
After the beep say ' <b>My favourite station</b> '	The system responds with: 'My favourite station, please say yes or no'
Press and release the voice button	'Beep'
After the beep say ' <b>Yes</b> '	After a few seconds the system responds with: 'My favourite station stored'

## Recalling the nametag you have just stored

Your instructions to the system	System response
Press and release the voice button	'Beep'
After the beep say ' <b>Radio tune my favourite station</b> '	The system responds with: 'Radio tune my favourite station' and tunes the radio to the frequency stored with this name

Now try storing a nametag of your choice, and then recalling it.

# JaguarVoice

## Entering a phone number

Your instructions to the system	System response
Press and release the voice button	'Beep'
After the beep say ' <b>Phone enter zero one six one four</b> '	The system responds with: 'Phone enter oh one six one four, ..... Continue entering digits or say dial, store, correction or cancel'
Press and release the voice button	'Beep'
After the beep say ' <b>nine six oh nine nine eight</b> '	The system responds with: nine six oh nine nine eight, ..... Continue entering digits or say dial, store, correction or cancel'
Press and release the voice button	'Beep'
After the beep say ' <b>Dial</b> '	The system responds with: 'Enter Dial'

Now try entering a phone number of your choice and try some of the following commands:

1. **DIAL**, dials the number entered.
2. **STORE**, stores a nametag of your choice (as in the above example with **Radio store name**).
3. **CORRECTION**, deletes the last string of digits entered, and allows you to re-enter them.
4. **CANCEL**, cancels the command.

**Note:** When entering a number of your choice, remember numbers can only be given as single digits, but you can enter the digits in as many groups as you like.

Also, when the system has read out the numbers you have entered, you do not have to wait for the 'Continue entering digits' prompt. Simply press the voice button and continue with your dialogue.

# JaguarVoice

---

## Operating tips

- After pressing the voice button, wait for the end of the single listening beep before giving the command.\* 'LISTENING' will be displayed on the instrument pack.
- Face forward and speak naturally, as if you were talking to a passenger or on the phone.
- Note the structure of the commands; remember this rather than trying to remember all the commands.

Device	Function	Setting
↙	↓	↘

'Radio Tune 97.4'

- If you forget any of the commands, try saying 'VOICE HELP'. The system will then give you a list of help menus available, from which you can choose the appropriate one for the command you need.
- The Voice system will repeat the command back to you and display it on the message centre. The command will then be performed.
- If you hear a double beep when you give a command, press the voice button and try again.\*

\* A single beep denotes when the voice system is listening for a command. A double beep denotes when the system has stopped listening, due to an error or when an incorrect command has been given.

## Command confirmation

After a command has been given, the system will give feedback of what it understood. The verbal feedback can be switched on or off by saying 'VOICE FEEDBACK ON' or 'VOICE FEEDBACK OFF'. Verbal feedback for help commands, directory listings, prompts, error messages and nametags cannot be switched off.

For the 'PHONE DIAL' commands, the system will prompt for confirmation before making the call. This confirmation can be switched on or off by saying 'PHONE CONFIRMATION ON' or 'PHONE CONFIRMATION OFF.'

For each voice command there is an associated visual confirmation, which is shown on the front instrument pack.

## Voice system prompts

During some commands and for voice training, you will be asked by the system for a reply. In such cases you must press and release the voice button then speak after the beep. The system will remind you twice so don't worry about having to respond to the system immediately.

# JaguarVoice

---

## Nametags

Nametags are a unique name or phrase of your choice which can be used to recall a radio station or dial a phone number.

For radio commands, 'PHONE DIAL <nametag>' is used to select a station that has been previously stored using the 'RADIO STORE NAME' command.

For phone commands, 'RADIO TUNE <nametag>' is used to dial a phone number that has been previously stored using the 'PHONE ENTER' or 'PHONE STORE' command. Phone numbers held in the voice system memory are quite separate from numbers held in the phone system memory (To call a number held in the phone memory, use the 'PHONE DIAL MEMORY <number>' command).

A spoken list of current nametags can be heard by giving the appropriate directory command.

- 'RADIO DIRECTORY'
- 'PHONE DIRECTORY'

There are also commands for deleting either individual names in a directory, or a complete directory. See "VOICE COMMAND LIST" on page 282.

## Hints on storing nametags

- You will have greater success of recalling, and remembering, nametags of two, three, or four words in length. Although nametags of one word in length are also acceptable.
- For best results, store nametags in a quiet environment, i.e. with the windows and sunroof closed, try not to be travelling at speeds above 100 km/h (60 mph), and ask other occupants to be quiet.
- Try not to store a nametag that sounds similar to a nametag already stored, or to any of the commands recognized by the system.

In addition, for phone nametags, do not use numbers, and for radio nametags, try not to use radio frequencies.

## Volume level adjustment

The verbal feedback volume level can be adjusted independently for the JaguarVoice system. To adjust, operate the sound system volume control or the steering wheel volume control whilst the voice system is being used. The speaker volume level can also be adjusted within the volume preset menu of the audio system.

# JaguarVoice

---

## Some useful notes:

- Only one person at a time can use the voice system.
- Excessive noise, for example while driving with windows open or in demist mode, may cause voice command misrecognition. If it is too noisy to use the phone, it is likely that voice commands will not be recognised.
- Voice commands cannot be given while a hands-free phone call is in progress.
- If the voice button is pressed whilst an announcement is in progress, the announcement will be cancelled. Press the voice button again to start a voice session.
- While 'LISTENING' is displayed on the message centre, the command can be cancelled by pressing the same voice button that was used to start the voice session, except when using the 'PHONE ENTER' command. To cancel a 'PHONE ENTER' voice session either say 'CANCEL' when 'LISTENING' is displayed or press the voice button and after the end of the beep say 'CANCEL'. During a store nametag session, if the voice button is pressed and released during 'LISTENING', the system will cancel after up to two seconds.
- Voice feedback can be interrupted by pressing the voice button that was used to start the voice session, whilst the feedback is playing.
- After starting to speak, the command must be completed within ten seconds.
- During a voice command the audio system and direction indicator ticking will be muted.
- The voice session will be cancelled if an alternative message requires the display/speaker (e.g. incoming phone call).

# JaguarVoice

---

## HOW TO SAY NUMBERS

Numbers in voice commands must be given as shown below. Either 'zero' or 'oh' can be used for '0', most users will find that 'zero' gives better results. See "VOICE COMMAND LIST" on page 282.

### Radio stations

Frequencies are said as in the following examples:

- 'Tune five thirty one AM', or 'Tune five thirty one' (531).
- 'Tune nine hundred' (900).
- 'Tune fourteen forty' (1440).
- 'Tune fifteen oh three AM' (1503).
- 'Tune ten eighty' (1080).
- 'Tune eighty nine point nine FM' or 'Tune eighty nine point nine' (89.9).
- 'Tune ninety point zero' or 'Tune ninety' (90.0).
- 'Tune one hundred point five' (100.5)
- 'Tune one oh one point one FM' (101.1).
- 'Tune one oh eight point oh', 'Tune one oh eight point zero', or 'Tune one oh eight' (108.0).

### Disc and track numbers

For CD commands, say disc and track numbers as in the following examples:

- 'Disc one' (1).
- 'Disc six track ten' (6, 10).
- 'Track twenty five' (25).
- 'Track forty seven' (47).

### Phone numbers

All phone numbers are said as single digits, as in the following example. Double, Triple and Treble are also acceptable commands if preceding a single digit. Plus (+), Star (\*) and Hash (#) are acceptable as the first digit of a number.

- 'Dial zero one two zero three four zero two one double four' (01203 402144).

When using the Phone Enter command, the first entry must be between 2 – 16 digits, then, 1 – 16 digits to a maximum of 32 in total.

### Temperatures

In climate control commands, say temperatures as in the following examples:

- 'Temperature seventy two' (72).
- 'Temperature eighty' (80).
- 'Temperature twenty one point five' (21.5).
- 'Temperature nineteen point zero', 'Temperature nineteen point oh' or 'Temperature nineteen' (19.0).

# JaguarVoice

---

## VOICE COMMAND LIST

Certain commands are only available to the driver, these are indicated in the following list.

### Key

( ) denotes an option, i.e. (ON/OFF) use either ON or OFF with this command.

< > indicates where to say a number or stored nametag.

[ ] denotes an optional word, e.g. 'VOICE [PLAY] DIRECTORY' can be given as 'VOICE DIRECTORY', or 'VOICE PLAY DIRECTORY'.

(front use only) – indicates this command is not available to rear occupants.

## General commands

- HELP
- VOICE HELP  
Lists all voice command help messages available.
- VOICE MEMORY HELP (front use only)
- VOICE FEEDBACK (ON/OFF)
- PHONE CONFIRMATION (ON/OFF)  
Switches on or off the system confirmation prompt before making a call when using the PHONE DIAL or PHONE MEMORY DIAL command.
- VOICE [PLAY] DIRECTORY (front use only)
- VOICE DELETE MEMORY (A/B) (front use only)
- VOICE DELETE DIRECTORY (front use only).

# JaguarVoice

---

## Radio commands

- RADIO PLAY or RADIO ON  
Turns the sound system on.
- RADIO OFF  
Turns the sound system off. Use this command to turn off the CD or CD changer.
- RADIO SEEK [UP]
- RADIO SEEK DOWN
- RADIO TUNE <frequency> [MEDIUM WAVE/LONG WAVE/FM]  
Tunes to the frequency given in the command.  
See “HOW TO SAY NUMBERS” on page 281.  
(The radio will not respond to Long Wave commands in Australia and New Zealand.)
- RADIO TUNE <nametag>
- [RADIO] [TUNE] PRESET <preset number>  
Selects the stored station corresponding to the preset number (1 to 9) given in the command.
- [RADIO] [TUNE] [BAND] (MEDIUM WAVE/LONG WAVE/FM)
- RADIO STORE NAME  
Stores the currently selected station, with a nametag of your choice. See “Storing a nametag to this station” on page 276. A total of 20 nametags can be stored.

- [RADIO] STORE PRESET <preset number>  
Stores the currently selected station to the preset given in the command.  
**Note:** The sound system must be in radio mode before giving the ‘RADIO STORE NAME’ or ‘RADIO STORE PRESET’ command.
- RADIO AUTOSTORE
- RADIO DELETE <nametag>
- RADIO DELETE DIRECTORY  
Deletes all currently stored radio nametags.
- RADIO [PLAY] DIRECTORY
- RADIO HELP
- RADIO MEMORY HELP

## Single CD commands (where fitted)

- CD PLAY or CD ON
- CD [PLAY] TRACK <track number>  
See “HOW TO SAY NUMBERS” on page 281.
- CD MIX TRACKS  
This will play the tracks of the current disc in a random order.
- CD MIX OFF
- CD HELP

## CD changer commands (where fitted)

- CHANGER PLAY or CHANGER ON
- [CHANGER] [PLAY] DISC <disc number>
- [CHANGER] [PLAY] TRACK <track number>  
See “HOW TO SAY NUMBERS” on page 281.
- [CHANGER] [PLAY] DISC <disc number> TRACK <track number>

# JaguarVoice

---

- CHANGER MIX TRACKS

This will play the tracks of the current disc in a random order.

- CHANGER MIX ALL

This will play all the tracks and discs within the CD changer in a random order.

- CHANGER MIX OFF

- CHANGER HELP

## Generic track commands

These commands play the current or previous CD, MD or Changer.

- [PLAY] TRACK <track number>
- MIX TRACKS
- MIX OFF

## Phone commands (where fitted)

**Note:** In noisy conditions, for example, in heavy rain or driving at high speed on a rough road surface, use the 'PHONE ENTER' command, entering the number in several groups for improved recognition.

- PHONE (ON/OFF)
- [PHONE] ENTER <2 – 16 phone digits>

See "HOW TO SAY NUMBERS" on page 281.

The system responds to this command by repeating the phone number back to you and then giving you the options below.

Remember to press the voice button to continue with one of the options.

– <more digits>

– DIAL

– STORE (give a *nametag* when prompted as in RADIO STORE NAME. See "Storing a *nametag* to this station" on page 276.

– CORRECTION

– CANCEL

See "Entering a phone number" on page 277.

A total of 40 *nametags* can be stored.

- (PHONE DIAL/DIAL) <phone number>  
See "HOW TO SAY NUMBERS" on page 281.
- [PHONE] REDIAL
- [PHONE] DIAL <*nametag*>

Calls the phone number stored with the *nametag* given.

# JaguarVoice

---

- [PHONE] DIAL MEMORY <memory location number>  
Calls the phone number stored in the phone memory location given.  
See “HOW TO SAY NUMBERS” on page 281.  
Memory numbers 1 – 100 refer to numbers stored in the phone memory and numbers 101 – 249 are numbers stored in the SIM card.
- PHONE STORE <phone number>  
Allows you to store a nametag to the number given in the command.  
The system will prompt you with ‘NAME PLEASE’, press and release the voice button and give a nametag of your choice, as in the RADIO STORE NAME. See “Storing a nametag to this station” on page 276.  
A total of 40 phone nametags can be stored.  
See “HOW TO SAY NUMBERS” on page 281.  
See “Nametags” on page 279.
- PHONE [PLAY] DIRECTORY
- PHONE DELETE <nametag>
- PHONE DELETE DIRECTORY  
Deletes all currently stored phone nametags.  
This does not affect numbers stored in the phone memory.
- PHONE CONFIRMATION (ON/OFF)
- PHONE HELP
- PHONE MEMORY HELP

## **Note:**

- When an outgoing phone call is terminated, the sound system will remain in phone mode. To change to another mode, give the appropriate voice command.
- The voice system is inactive while a phone call is in progress.

## **Automatic climate control commands**

- CLIMATE CONTROL ON
- CLIMATE CONTROL OFF
- [CLIMATE CONTROL] AUTOMATIC [ON]
- [CLIMATE CONTROL] TEMPERATURE <temperature> [DEGREES]

The temperature can be given in Celsius or Fahrenheit, in the range 17 to 31 degrees Celsius (61 to 89 degrees Fahrenheit), in increments of 0.5 degree Celsius (1.0 degree Fahrenheit).

See “HOW TO SAY NUMBERS” on page 281.

**Note:** Do not say the word ‘Celsius’ or ‘Fahrenheit’.

- [CLIMATE CONTROL] TEMPERATURE (HIGH/LOW) (front use only)
- [CLIMATE CONTROL] RECIRC [ON] (front use only)

Recirculation mode. See “AIR RECIRCULATION” on page 146.

This command will not be executed if the climate control system is in defrost mode.

# JaguarVoice

---

## Automatic climate control commands (continued)

- [CLIMATE CONTROL] BALANCE [ON]  
When the driver gives this command the temperature of all zones are set to the same as the driver's side temperature. When a rear occupant gives this command the temperature of both rear zones will be set to the same.
- [CLIMATE CONTROL] DEFROST [ON] (front use only).
- CLIMATE CONTROL HELP.
- REAR CLIMATE CONTROL OFF.
- [CLIMATE CONTROL] RECIRC [ON]  
Switches the climate control system to recirc mode. This command will be disabled if the climate control system is in defrost mode.

## VOICE TRAINING

The voice system is able to interpret most English speakers without difficulty. If, however, you find that commands are sometimes not being recognised, you can train the voice system to recognise your voice. The voice system can be trained for two people using voice memories A and B.

After Voice Training, the system will automatically recognise the users whose voices are held in the voice memory. The system can still be used by other users, with no loss of recognition.

### Training procedure

Training can only be carried out whilst sitting in the driver's seat.

Give the command 'VOICE DIRECTORY', this will list the memories used and tell you if they are stored with a nametag.

If no memories are in use, either memory can be used.

If both memories are in use and you wish to overwrite one of the memories, select the memory you wish to overwrite.

- First, select which voice memory to train.
- Position the vehicle, with the sunroof and windows closed, in a reasonably quiet outdoor location.
- Sit in the driving seat with the engine running, the parkbrake on and the transmission in Park or Neutral.

# JaguarVoice

---

- Press and release the MODE button on the radio (adjacent to the volume control). Mode level 1 will display. Press the MODE button repeatedly until 'ADV MODE N/Y' is displayed. Turn the volume control to select 'ADV MODE YES' Press the MODE button repeatedly until 'VOICE A' is displayed. To select 'VOICE B' press the MODE button again.
- With 'VOICE A' or 'VOICE B' displayed on the radio press the seek up control to start Voice Training. Once you have selected which memory to use, the system gives verbal instructions about the training procedure.
- Follow the instructions given by the system. See "TRAINING COMMAND LIST" on page 288.
- To cancel Voice Training at any time press and hold the voice button for five seconds.

**Note:**

- *Some of the phrases which the voice system asks you to repeat during voice training are not valid voice commands, these are used to collect specific phonetic phrases required by the system.*
- *If the user does not speak after a phrase prompt, the voice system will provide two reminder prompts then cancel Voice Training.*
- *The voice system turns off the phone whilst in training mode, so it will need to be turned on manually after Voice Training has finished.*

# JaguarVoice

---

## TRAINING COMMAND LIST

The 'sounds' of the following training commands are required for the voice system to 'learn', although some of the equipment (TV, navigation, telephone etc.) stated in the commands may not be fitted to a particular vehicle.

1. display select twilight colours
2. prefer toll roads
3. radio ten oh eight AM
4. store preset five
5. tune one oh five point two FM
6. telephone enter eight four six three seven
7. select one zero four point nine
8. CD changer play disc one track seventy six
9. climate temperature twenty five point oh degrees
10. radio one oh eight point zero
11. phone enter triple three treble zero
12. map traffic information off
13. voice guidance on
14. dial memory two hundred
15. teletext page eight four seven
16. radio tune thirteen ninety five AM
17. select fifteen eighty four medium wave
18. changer play CD six track sixty nine
19. navigation select zoom level eleven
20. telephone dial memory fifty two
21. climate control balance on
22. avoid major roads
23. map show complete route
24. navigation clear next waypoint
25. radio tune one oh seven point one FM
26. screen select automatic colours
27. repeat last instruction
28. phone enter gate double three one oh
29. TV channel down
30. television seek up
31. radio tune two sixteen long wave
32. select twelve thirty three medium wave
33. voice delete memory A
34. climate control seventeen point zero degrees
35. navigation show current position
36. CD changer play CD two track nineteen
37. map zoom out maximum

# JaguarVoice

## TROUBLESHOOTING ERROR MESSAGES

In addition to the voice command prompts given by the system, the following error messages may be displayed on the instrument pack display. Most of these messages are accompanied by an advisory double beep.

Voice Command Group	Message	Meaning
General	VOICE NOT READY	The voice system is initialising (when ignition is first turned on). It takes the voice system approximately ten seconds to initialise.
	NO SPEECH DETECTED	<p>The voice system has not heard any speech.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Ensure that the command is given after the end of the beep.</li><li>• Ensure that the command is given within a maximum of five seconds from the end of the beep.</li></ul> <p><b>Note:</b> <i>Be sure you know what to say before pressing the Voice button.</i></p> <p>If this error is displayed for all commands given this may indicate a fault with the microphone or microphone wiring, consult your Jaguar Dealer for assistance.</p>
	COMMAND CANCELLED	Displayed if the user cancels a voice session during the LISTENING period or another system interrupts the voice session (i.e. incoming phone call).

# JaguarVoice

Voice Command Group	Message	Meaning
<b>General (continued)</b>	COMMAND NOT RECOGNISED	<p>The voice system has failed to recognise your command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that the command format is valid. See “VOICE COMMAND LIST” on page 282.</li> <li>• Ensure that the command is given after the end of the beep.</li> <li>• Look forward and speak clearly without pausing between words and at a level appropriate to the ambient noise level; imagine you are making a hands-free phone call.</li> <li>• Ensure that the ambient noise level is not excessive, for example, windows open or demist on.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> <i>If it is too noisy to use the phone, it is likely that voice commands will not be recognised.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If optional words of the command have been omitted, then the command should be tried with these in place.</li> <li>• If a number of commands have been given in rapid succession resulting in the message ‘COMMAND NOT RECOGNISED’ to be displayed, then allow the system to recover (approximately one minute) before trying the command again.</li> <li>• If the system consistently fails to recognise commands, the voice training procedure should be carried out to improve the recognition response for the speaker.</li> </ul>

# JaguarVoice

Voice Command Group	Message	Meaning
<b>Phone</b>	CONNECT PHONE TRY AGAIN	If the phone is in its cradle, but the voice system keeps saying 'dial not accepted, please connect phone and try again', then the phone handset may not be correctly attached to its storage cradle. Try re-attaching the phone handset. If the problem persists, the phone may be incorrectly reporting its cradle status. Try powering the phone handset off and on to resolve the issue.
<b>Voice Training</b>	SET HANDBRAKE TO CONTINUE	This text message is displayed with its associated verbal feedback when the parkbrake/handbrake is released during voice training. To continue voice training the brake must be re-applied.
	VOICE TRAINING UNSUCCESSFUL	This text message is displayed with its associated verbal feedback if the voice system could not save the training model recorded. If this problem occurs, please turn the ignition off, wait five seconds, and turn the ignition back on. Please check that there is no abnormal/excessive noise entering the vehicle interior and try running the voice training procedure again. If the voice system continues to exhibit this error, consult your Jaguar Dealer for assistance.

# JaguarVoice

Voice Command Group	Message	Meaning
Nametags	RADIO NOT IN TUNER MODE	Displayed when the user tries to store a radio nametag and the radio has not been placed in tuner mode, for example playing a CD.
	NAMES TOO MUCH ALIKE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This response will be received when storing a nametag if the nametag being given has already been stored. This can be confirmed by giving the RADIO DIRECTORY or PHONE DIRECTORY command.</li> <li>If this response is received and the nametag has not been used already, then it is too similar to an existing nametag or voice grammar and an alternative should be used.</li> </ul>
	SPOKE DURING LISTENING TONE	Displayed when user utters a radio or phone nametag while the beep is playing. Please wait for the end of the beep then say the nametag.
	DIRECTORY FULL	The user has tried to add a nametag to a directory that is full. The voice system can store up to 40 phone and 20 radio nametags.
	DIRECTORY EMPTY	Displayed when a RADIO DIRECTORY, PHONE DIRECTORY or VOICE DIRECTORY command is given and no nametags have been stored in the associated directory.
	NAMETAG TOO LONG	The nametag given is too short (so as not to mistake the nametag for inadvertent noise). If you experience this error please provide a longer nametag.
	STORE CANCELLED	Displayed and associated verbal response is provided when a nametag storage session is cancelled by the user.

# JaguarVoice

<b>Voice Command Group</b>	<b>Message</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>Nametags</b> (continued)	STORE FAILED	Displayed when the voice system fails to store a nametag.  Possible reasons could be that the nametag is too long or there is too much noise. Try the command again. If the error persists, try storing the nametag under quiet conditions such as with the vehicle parked and the windows closed.



# Index

Address book . . . . .	271	Bulb renewal . . . . .	170
Air bags . . . . .	66	dip beam . . . . .	171
Airbag service information . . . . .	71	front direction indicator . . . . .	172
Alarms and audible signals . . . . .	52	front fog light . . . . .	173
Alternator . . . . .	195	front parking side light . . . . .	172
Anti-freeze . . . . .	193	headlight, dip beam . . . . .	171
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) . . . . .	128	high mounted stop light . . . . .	174
Audible warnings . . . . .	96	main beam . . . . .	170
Audio system		number plate light . . . . .	173
audio setup . . . . .	245	parking (side) light . . . . .	172
CD changer . . . . .	251	rear light - estate . . . . .	174
CD control . . . . .	248	rear light - saloon . . . . .	173
change audio source . . . . .	246	rear light - sedan . . . . .	173
digital signal processing . . . . .	246	rear light - wagon . . . . .	174
radio broadcast data systems		side repeater indicator . . . . .	171
(RBDS) . . . . .	235	Call volume . . . . .	255
radio operation . . . . .	244	Catalytic converters . . . . .	140
single CD player operation . . . . .	248	Changing a phone number . . . . .	270
steering wheel controls . . . . .	234	Checking and top-up . . . . .	187
Automatic climate control with LCD		brake fluid . . . . .	190
screen . . . . .	144	engine coolant . . . . .	192
Automatic transmission . . . . .	125	engine oil . . . . .	187
gear selector positions . . . . .	125	power steering fluid . . . . .	189
gearshift interlock . . . . .	125	windscreen washer fluid . . . . .	191
kickdown . . . . .	126	Child safety . . . . .	72
limp-home mode . . . . .	126	check list (LATCH seats) . . . . .	75
Battery		check list (non-LATCH seats) . . . . .	74
charging . . . . .	195	choosing a suitable child seat . . . . .	73
lead disconnect/reconnect . . . . .	52, 195	installing a LATCH child seat . . . . .	76
warnings . . . . .	194	LATCH child restraints . . . . .	74
Bluetooth description . . . . .	255	LATCH seats . . . . .	73
Brakes		top tether anchorages . . . . .	77
emergency brake assist (EBA) . . . . .	129	Child safety locks . . . . .	49
		Child seats	
		Automatic Locking Reels (ALR) . . . . .	73

# Index

Climate control		
general points . . . . .	142	
recommended operation . . . . .	141	
touch-screen		
air conditioning . . . . .	155	
AUTO mode . . . . .	151	
blower mute . . . . .	155	
blower speed . . . . .	155	
Celsius/Fahrenheit selection . . . . .	152	
climate options . . . . .	157	
controls . . . . .	150	
displays . . . . .	151	
dual temperature zones . . . . .	152	
external temperature . . . . .	152	
heated screens and mirrors . . . . .	154	
latched air recirculation . . . . .	153	
manual air distribution . . . . .	155	
ram air . . . . .	156	
switching off . . . . .	156	
temperature selection . . . . .	152	
timed air recirculation . . . . .	153	
windscreen defrost/demist . . . . .	154	
Clock . . . . .	80	
Clock setting . . . . .	239	
Compact disc changer		
CD check sequence . . . . .	251	
CD selection . . . . .	252	
CDC button . . . . .	252	
display panel . . . . .	252	
loading discs into the magazine . . . . .	251	
mix . . . . .	252	
operation . . . . .	251	
pause . . . . .	253	
repeat . . . . .	253	
seek up and down . . . . .	253	
Door locks and handles . . . . .	47	
smart locking . . . . .	47	
Door window operation . . . . .	82	
DTMF tones . . . . .	270	
Dynamic stability control . . . . .	131	
Electric window operation . . . . .	82	
Electrical accessories . . . . .	201	
Emergency brake assist . . . . .	129	
Emergency starting . . . . .	159	
Engine block heater . . . . .	193	
Engine number . . . . .	39	
Estate accessory socket . . . . .	201	
Exterior lighting . . . . .	105	
daylight running lights . . . . .	106	
direction indicators . . . . .	107	
hazard warning . . . . .	107	
headlight convenience . . . . .	105	
rear fog lights . . . . .	106	
Fire extinguisher . . . . .	133, 182	
First aid kit . . . . .	133	
Floor mat retention . . . . .	35	
Foreign travel . . . . .	133	
Fuel and refuelling . . . . .	136	
Fuel capacity . . . . .	137	
Fuel requirements . . . . .	138	
petrol engines . . . . .	138	
Fuel tank filling . . . . .	136	
Fuses and fuse boxes . . . . .	175	
fuse box locations . . . . .	176	
fuse renewing . . . . .	175	
Garage door opener . . . . .	54	
General driving information . . . . .	132	
engine braking . . . . .	132	
engine oil consumption . . . . .	185	
parking the vehicle . . . . .	132	
running-in . . . . .	38	
use of headlights in daylight . . . . .	132	
warming up . . . . .	132	
General information . . . . .	33, 232	
Generator . . . . .	195	
Health and safety . . . . .	39	
Hood release . . . . .	184	
Horn . . . . .	112	
Ignition switch . . . . .	43	
gearshift interlock . . . . .	43	
steering column lock . . . . .	43	
to remove the key . . . . .	43	
Inertia switch . . . . .	158	

# Index

---

Instruments . . . . .	90	JaguarVoice	
engine temperature . . . . .	91	command confirmation . . . . .	278
fuel level gauge . . . . .	90	command list . . . . .	282
odometer . . . . .	91	how to say numbers . . . . .	281
speedometer . . . . .	90	introduction . . . . .	274
tachometer . . . . .	90	language and accent . . . . .	274
Interior features . . . . .	118	nametags . . . . .	279
cigar lighter and ashtray . . . . .	121	operating tips . . . . .	278
glove compartment . . . . .	121	steering wheel voice switch . . . . .	275
rear centre armrest . . . . .	122	training	
sliding armrest . . . . .	119	training command list . . . . .	288
sun visors . . . . .	122	training procedure . . . . .	286
Interior lighting		trouble-shooting error messages . . . . .	289
dimmer switch . . . . .	109	useful notes . . . . .	280
Interior lights		using the system . . . . .	275
battery saver . . . . .	108	voice system prompts . . . . .	278
entry/exit . . . . .	108	volume level adjustment . . . . .	279
reading/map lights . . . . .	108	Key transmitter . . . . .	45
rear roof light . . . . .	108	battery replacement . . . . .	46
Introduction		Keys . . . . .	44
audio systems . . . . .	227	LATCH child restraints . . . . .	74
automatic climate control . . . . .	226	LATCH seats . . . . .	73
in-car telephone . . . . .	227	Lighting	
JaguarVoice . . . . .	227	Exterior . . . . .	105
screen cleaning . . . . .	226	Interior . . . . .	108
Jacking . . . . .	161	Locking wheel nuts . . . . .	162
Jaguar Dealers . . . . .	33	Luggage compartment . . . . .	85
Jaguar parts and accessories . . . . .	33	emergency release . . . . .	51
		estate luggage cover . . . . .	88
		estate luggage load net . . . . .	88
		tie-down loops, saloon . . . . .	85
		tie-down loops, sedan . . . . .	85
		tie-down loops, wagon . . . . .	86
		underfloor storage - wagon . . . . .	86
		wagon luggage cover . . . . .	88
		wagon luggage load net . . . . .	88

# Index

Maintenance . . . . .	183	Radio set up . . . . .	242
general precautions . . . . .	183	Rain sensitive wiper control . . . . .	114
protect the environment . . . . .	183	Rear seat back fold down . . . . .	87
regular checks . . . . .	185	Regular checks . . . . .	185
regular servicing . . . . .	183	Regular servicing . . . . .	34
Message centre . . . . .	97	Reporting safety defects . . . . .	42
messages . . . . .	98	Reverse aid . . . . .	110
Tire Pressure Monitoring System . . . . .	214	Roof-rack . . . . .	133
Mirrors		Roof-rack	
door . . . . .	84	capacity . . . . .	224
electrochromic . . . . .	84	Running-in . . . . .	38
heating . . . . .	84	Seat adjustment . . . . .	58
Mobile phones . . . . .	35	front seats - electrical . . . . .	59
Occupancy sensing . . . . .	69	head restraints . . . . .	60
Occupant restraints . . . . .	66	Seat belt fitting . . . . .	64
On-board event data		Seat belts . . . . .	62
event data recording . . . . .	41	Seat heaters . . . . .	61
service data recording . . . . .	41	Security features . . . . .	52
Owner general information . . . . .	33	battery reconnection . . . . .	52
Pairing . . . . .	259	panic alarm . . . . .	53
Parkbrake . . . . .	117	Single CD player	
Parking assist . . . . .	110	CD button . . . . .	248
Phone book . . . . .	271	display panel . . . . .	248
Portable phones . . . . .	35	eject and CD-in indicator . . . . .	248
Protect the environment . . . . .	38	mix . . . . .	248
Radio		repeat . . . . .	248
auto memory . . . . .	242, 247	seek up and down . . . . .	248
automatic volume control . . . . .	239	Sitting in the correct position . . . . .	58
band switch . . . . .	241	Sport mode . . . . .	127
change audio source . . . . .	241	Starting/stopping the vehicle . . . . .	123
digital signal processing . . . . .	240	before starting . . . . .	123
display panel . . . . .	239	starting a petrol engine . . . . .	123
mode level 1 . . . . .	239	Steering column adjustment . . . . .	81
ON/OFF and volume . . . . .	239	Steering wheel controls . . . . .	258
presetting memorised stations . . . . .	241	Sunroof . . . . .	113
priority programme type (PPTY) . . . . .	236		
programme type (PTY) . . . . .	236		
RBDS operation . . . . .	236		
RBDS trouble-shooting guide . . . . .	238		
reception . . . . .	235		
seek and manual tuning . . . . .	241		
source tone memory . . . . .	241		

# Index

Telephone . . . . .	255	Towbar fixing points. . . . .	135
PIN. . . . .	270	Towing a caravan or trailer. . . . .	134
Safety . . . . .	256	Towing a trailer. . . . .	134
Standard . . . . .	262	Towing eye. . . . .	168
Making a call . . . . .	264	Traction control . . . . .	130
Memory recall dialling . . . . .	265	Trailer weights . . . . .	224
Multizone voice . . . . .	265	Vehicle	
Receiving a call . . . . .	264	recovery . . . . .	166
Rejecting a call . . . . .	264	transporting . . . . .	167
System overview . . . . .	255	Vehicle care . . . . .	198
Touch-screen . . . . .	266	alloy road wheels . . . . .	200
Making a call . . . . .	266	automatic car wash . . . . .	199
Multizone voice . . . . .	269	carpets . . . . .	198
Receiving a call . . . . .	267	cloth upholstery . . . . .	198
Temporary spare wheel . . . . .	162	exterior care . . . . .	199
Tire care		glass surfaces . . . . .	199
Tire pressures . . . . .	205	interior care . . . . .	198
Tire grading . . . . .	215	leather upholstery . . . . .	37
Tire Pressure Monitoring System . . . . .	211	paintwork . . . . .	200
Tires. . . . .	202	removing grease or tar . . . . .	199
care . . . . .	204	removing stains . . . . .	198
damage . . . . .	205	underbonnet cleaning . . . . .	200
pressures. . . . .	209	underhood cleaning . . . . .	200
renewal . . . . .	216	washing . . . . .	199
repair . . . . .	205	Vehicle data	
snow chains . . . . .	218	dimensions. . . . .	225
temporary-use spare wheel . . . . .	216	engine . . . . .	222
Tire Pressure Monitoring		roof load and trailer weights . . . . .	224
System (TPMS) . . . . .	211	weights. . . . .	223
wear. . . . .	204	Vehicle identification . . . . .	39
winter (snow) tires . . . . .	218	Vehicle locking and unlocking . . . . .	47
Touch-screen . . . . .	226	Vehicle recovery . . . . .	166
Touch-screen controls		towing eye . . . . .	168
Last number redial . . . . .	267	transporting . . . . .	167
List by name . . . . .	269	Vehicle security . . . . .	44
Location number . . . . .	268	alarms and audible signals. . . . .	52
Name entry . . . . .	269	child safety locks . . . . .	49
Touch-screen display . . . . .	228	door locks and handles . . . . .	47
brightness/contrast . . . . .	230	key transmitter . . . . .	45
menu . . . . .	229	keys . . . . .	44
system setup . . . . .	230	luggage compartment . . . . .	50
volume preset . . . . .	229	security light. . . . .	44
Touring . . . . .	133	Voice activation . . . . .	256

# Index

---

Volume . . . . .	255
Wagon accessory socket . . . . .	201
Warning lights . . . . .	92
Warning triangle . . . . .	133
Warnings, Cautions and Notes . . . . .	33
Warranties . . . . .	35
Weights . . . . .	223
Wheel changing . . . . .	163
Wheel changing and jacking . . . . .	161
Wheels and tires	
General information . . . . .	202
Wind resonance . . . . .	82
Window operation . . . . .	82
Window tinting . . . . .	36
Windscreen	
wipers/washers . . . . .	114
Winter driving . . . . .	132
Wiper blades . . . . .	197